

**МИНИСТЕРСТВО ОБРАЗОВАНИЯ И НАУКИ
КЫРГЫЗСКОЙ РЕСПУБЛИКИ**

ЖАЛАЛ-АБАДСКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ УНИВЕРСИТЕТ

**СБОРНИК УПРАЖНЕНИЙ
ПО ГРАММАТИКЕ
АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА**

Жалал-Абад

**УДК 80/81
ББК 81.2
А 64**

Рекомендовано кафедрой английского языка.
Утверждено научно-методическим советом ЖАГУ.

Редактор Сатыбалдыева Г. А. – к.филол.наук, доцент
Рецензент Шамурзаев Г. Ж. – к.филол.наук, доцент

Составители:
Курманакунов Б. Н.
Жороева Г. А.

Сборник упражнений по Грамматике английского языка. 2022, Ж.:
152 стр.

ISBN 978 -9967 -09 -146 -22

Сборник содержит упражнения, которые дают практический материал для усвоения курса грамматики. Предложения и отрывки, которые служат материалом упражнений, взяты из современной английской и американской литературы и представляют собой образцы хорошего современного английского языка, типичного для него как по лексике, так и по грамматическим структурам. Наличие ключей позволяет использовать сборник и для самостоятельной работы.

Предназначается для студентов институтов и факультетов иностранных языков.

**А 4602000000
ISBN 978 -9967 -09 -146 -22**

**УДК 80/81
ББК 80/81**

Содержание

Введение.....	4
The Verb	5
Tense-Aspect Forms	5
Passive Voice Forms	48
Modal Verbs	53
The Verb. Means of Expressing Unreality	70
Verbals	81
Nouns.....	110
Articles	112
Adjectives.....	143
Pronouns	144

Введение

Предлагаемый сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка содержит тренировочные упражнения, которые должны обеспечить практическое усвоение материала. Упражнения составлены в полном соответствии с теми лингвистическими и методическими принципами, которые положены в основу учебника, с его структурой и организацией учебного материала в нем.

Количество упражнений по каждой теме определяется как емкостью самой темы, так и степенью трудности ее усвоения студентами, родным языком которых является русский и кыргызский.

Материалом для упражнений служат предложения, ситуации и отрывки, взятые из современной английской и американской литературы и отобранные с таким расчетом, чтобы они, с одной стороны, не были бы трудны лексически, а с другой стороны, служили бы образцом хорошего английского языка, который может быть использован не только для тренировки и закрепления того или иного грамматического правила, но и более широко - для изучения идиоматики английского языка в широком смысле этого слова.

Другим принципом отбора материала, включенного в упражнения, является его типичность для английского языка как по лексике и грамматике, так и по ситуациям. В силу этого последнего обстоятельства материал упражнений приобретает познавательную ценность в страноведческом плане: интересно знать, как принято вести себя и говорить в определенных ситуациях, находясь среди людей, говорящих по-английски. Для проверки правильности понимания студентами того или иного узуса рекомендуется многое в упражнениях переводить на русский или кыргызский языки, особенно в тех случаях, когда в русском/кыргызском языке существуют совсем другие формы выражения тех же мыслей.

Виды упражнений определяются характером грамматического материала, подлежащего тренировке. Поэтому в разных грамматических темах могут быть представлены разные виды упражнений.

Большое значение придается упражнениям, содержащим примеры для анализа и объяснения употребления того или иного грамматического явления. При умелом использовании их преподаватель может осуществить одновременно несколько методических задач. Во-первых, упражнения на анализ дают преподавателю возможность, очень ненавязчиво, проверить знание студентами грамматических правил и правильное их понимание. Во-вторых, эти упражнения создают хорошую основу для того, чтобы научить студентов логически формулировать мысли на английском языке. В-третьих, в процессе выполнения этих упражнений преподаватель учит студентов глубокому лингвистическому анализу текста, обращая их внимание не только на наличие изучаемых грамматических явлений в примерах, но и на их окружение и на логику их употребления. В-четвертых, при выполнении упражнений на анализ в классе создаются естественные условия для спонтанной речи, т. е. для развития навыков устной речи на уроках грамматики. Интересно отметить, что говорение в этом случае выходит далеко за рамки обсуждения изучаемого правила, ибо ситуативность примеров невольно подводит студентов к необходимости примыслить всю ситуацию в целом, что, как правило, вызывает оживленные дискуссии в классе.

В целях развития навыков устной речи можно также использовать и все упражнения, представляющие собой связные тексты. После выполнения задания, указанного в инструкции к упражнению, все связные тексты могут быть подвергнуты вопросно-ответной обработке и пересказу.

Переводные упражнения включены в сборник только в тех случаях, когда грамматический материал в других видах упражнений тренировке не поддается. В этом случае следует иметь в виду, что выполнять такие упражнения в силу того, что перевод с русского/кыргызского языка на английский редко бывает дословным, следует, строго руководствуясь тем, что сказано в задании к ним.

The Verb Tense-Aspect Forms

Ex. 1. Explain the use of the Present Indefinite in the following sentences:

1. I sleep here. My father sleeps in his study. 2. In case she wants to see him, he'll come over. 3. «Your mouth is bleeding. Does it hurt?» Martha asked me. 4. Where do we go from here? 5. Please, see that the children don't get nervous. 6. I do a lot of traveling, you know. 7. One lives and learns. 8. He owns a big car. 9. «It won't do any good to anyone if you get ill» I said. 10. «His men act silently as a rule. They wear dark glasses and they call after dark» he added. 11. You understand what we're talking about? 12. Changes happen very quickly here. 13. How quickly you leap to his defense! 14. I said, «I take things as they come» 15. His temper will not be right until we are at home again. 16. «Do you often» I asked, «take holidays in these parts?» 17. She beat with her hand on the back of the sofa and cried to them: «You talk too much» 18. «It's too late to go anywhere», «What do we do then?» 19. «Perhaps after breakfast I could ring up my family». «The telephone doesn't work». 20. He's very interesting when he talks about guerilla-fighting. 21. Then the captain announced in a duty voice: «Tomorrow afternoon we arrive by four o'clock.» 22. «The news calls for champagne,» Jones said. 23. Why don't you go back home? 24. They wish to make sure that he does not alter his plans. 25. She thought he wanted to look a mystery man to her. «You play your role fine,» she said.

Ex. 2. Explain the use of the Present Continuous in the following sentences:

1. Bill, stop that disgusting game you're playing. 2. They've moved to their London house. They are buying new furniture. 3. He paused and looked at her. «You're shaking. Are you all right?» 4. He is always having to check his emotions. 5. I am meeting Jason at his office on the 25th. Would you join us? 6. You know that cinema audiences are declining in the United States. 7. The rain is just beginning. 8. Sally put down the telephone. «It was Dan. He's staying at the club tonight. He's too tired to drive home.» 9. You are always drinking tea when I come here for a snack. 10. I miss her very much, almost every minute of the day I think of her, or I think I'm hearing her. 11. He started into the house ahead of us shouting, «Mary, what are you doing? Your guests have come.» 12. «I'm sorry,» I said, «I'm being clumsy.» 13. My cousin just rented an old barn to a young man who repairs bicycles. He's there all the time. Even on Sundays. He's working on some kind of an invention. 14. My father is always saying things that he shouldn't say in front of me. 15. «Don't go,» he said. «I feel faint. The room is spinning around.»

Ex. 3. Use the Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous in the following sentences:

1. He has suffered a great deal of pain. You (not to think) he (to behave) very well, though? 2. «I (to live) up there,» she said, indicating the gates. 3. I never (to change) my shoes even when I (to get) my feet wet. 4. «By the way,» I asked Arthur, «what Bill (to do) now?» 5. The guard stared at him. «You (to have) a pass?» 6. «I'm sorry. I'm no good at this sort of thing. I can't do it.» «You properly (not to try).» 7. «Mr. Brown (to play) cards?» he asked. 8. «Luis (to keep) something secret.» «He (not to

tell) you everything?» 9 They will have to stay with us when they (to arrive) here. 10. «And what has become of Mr. Jones?» the man asked. «He (to do) well.» 11. «You must forgive me,» Mr. Smith said, «but I (not to touch) alcohol.» 12. It's no use mumbling at me out of the side of your mouth, and imagining that you (to speak) French. 13. «I (to expect) I'll do whatever you (to say),» she said. 14. «Dan,» she said, turning to her husband with her hand over the mouthpiece, «why your brother (call) so early?» 15. I (to believe) she (to feel) foolish this morning. 16. If there is one thing I (not to like) on a voyage it is the unexpected. Naturally I (not to talk) of the sea. The sea (to present) no problem. 17. He will give me a welcome whenever I (to come) here. 18. A very old woman was staring at them intently. «We (to do) something to attract attention?» Grace asked. 19. At the further end of the village (to stand) the medieval church. 20. «I shall go mad if this (to go) on much longer,» said Rex.

Ex. 4. Translate the following sentences into English concentrating on the use of the Present Indefinite and the Present Continuous:

1. Где Тед? - В саду. - Что он там делает? 2. Брат никогда не простит мне, если я позволю тебе уйти. 3. Я не имею ни малейшего представления, о чем вы говорите. 4. Во всех комнатах отеля есть ванна. 5. Он слышал, как она говорила по телефону: «Нет, у меня все в порядке. Я проснулась и завтракаю». 6. Мне, возможно, следует предупредить вас. Мы обучаем прямым методом. Мы не говорим ни на чем, кроме эсперанто. 7. Значит ли это, что я старею? 8. А что люди говорят обо мне здесь?» - спросила она. 9. Но они ничего не сделали по этому поводу. Как вы думаете, чего они ждут? 10. Этот народ говорит на языке, которого никто не знает. 11. Их компания строит новый автомобиль. Это большая новость. 12. Ты знаешь, как он любит автомобили. 13. Кстати, что здесь происходит? 14. Всякий раз, когда вам встретится слово, которое вы не знаете, посмотрите его в словаре. 15. «Я не сплю в доме», - сказал он.

Ex. 5. Explain why the Present Continuous is not used in the following sentences despite the fact that the actions in them take place at the moment of speaking:

1. The phone's ringing. Who's it for, I wonder? 2. You talk as if your son were a little boy. 3. Your scheme sounds full of holes to me. 4. There was a burst of laughter and music. Rose said wistfully: «They have a good time, don't they?» 5. The whole thing must be done right away. That leaves us only one alternative. 6. What's this? Sam, do you hear that? 7. What's the matter now? Why do you talk to me like that? 8. I'm sorry. I apologize. 9. «I feel a bit shaken.» «You surprise me. I've never seen you like that.» 10. «Do you think there may be some mistake here?» «Why do you ask me?»

Ex. 6. Translate the following sentences into English concentrating on the choice between the Present Indefinite and the Present Continuous to express actions taking place at the moment of speaking:

1. «Это моя ошибка. Я приношу извинения», - сказал он. 2. Где лейтенант? - Да вон он там лежит, наблюдает за вражеским патрулем. 3. Я все еще не понимаю вас. 4. На перекрестке старик сказал торопливо: «Я покидаю тебя здесь. Я иду к дочери». 5. Я говорю тебе это в качестве предупреждения, Милли. 6. Он знает, что мы уходим? 7. Вы что, хотите мне сказать, что мой отец врун? - О нет, нет,

молодой человек, вы преувеличиваете. 8. Что ты имеешь в виду, Сэм? Ты говоришь загадками. 9. Не будь так уверен в этом. Тебе это не идет. 10. Неужели ты не видишь, что я устал? Все, чего мне сейчас хочется - это сигарета и ванна. 11. Как ты чувствуешь себя сейчас? Почему ты не ешь суп? - Я не хочу. 12. Поль где-нибудь здесь? - Он принимает ванну. 13. Почему ты такой раздражительный? - Я не раздражительный. - Тогда не кричи. - Я не кричу.

Ex. 7. Use the Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous to refer the actions in the following sentences to the future:

1. I'm Dr Salt. and I have an appointment with your chief. Now where I (to go) in? 2. Do you know what time we (to arrive) at the frontier? 3. I know that he (to leave) for the village tomorrow. 4. «What we (to do) now?» she asked as they reached the street. 5. I can't fetch you because I no longer have my car. I (to sell) it tomorrow. 6. The next plane (to leave) Salt Lake at six o'clock. You can catch it yet. 7. She looked at her husband. «I'm nervous. What I (to tell) them?» 8. Her voice was sharp and commanding: «I (not to go) home alone. Come on.» 9. Loren (to return) from his honeymoon tomorrow and I'd like to see him before the meeting on Friday. 10. Where we (to go) from here? 11. The truck disappeared on the other side of the hill, leaving the soldiers behind. «We (to dig) in here,» said the lieutenant looking at the map. 12. Ted (to come) here this morning. 13. Norah said: «I (to go) home tomorrow.» «Why?» «My law term (to begin) soon.» 14. «What you (to do) tonight?» «I don't know yet.»

Ex. 8. Use the proper tense -aspect form to express future actions in the following sentences:

1. We'll talk when we (to get) there. 2. I'll see that everything (to be) in order. 3. I don't know when she (to be) home. 4. Joseph, see that there (to be) plenty of lamps for the guests. 5. We'll wait here till it (to get) dark. 6. You will stay here and make sure no one (to approach) the road. 7. He asks if you (to meet) him in the library at five o'clock. 8. I advise you to make sure the bottle (not to be) showing out of the box. 9. He will be very useful if you (to treat) him right. 10. He will take care that they (to be) fit to do the job. 11. He wants to know if I (to deliver) this parcel. 12. If all (to go) well, I shall finish it in a fortnight. 13. Stay by the door and wait to make sure that he (to switch) off the light at the gates. 14. I'll see that everything (to be) properly packed and put into store. 15. I wonder what the weather is going to be like and if I (to be) warm. 16. We'll have peace together when he (to be) gone.

Ex. 9. Use the Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous of the verbs in brackets:

1. I'm about to move to London and I (to try) to decide which books and records to take along. 2. «You're young,» he said. «Young people (to do) a lot of foolish things.» 3. Why you (to wear) an engagement ring? You are not engaged. 4. It was a shock to her, but she is the kind that (not to break) down. 5. One shouldn't drink when one (to drive). 6. She always (to try) a little too hard to make people like her. 7. «What he (to do) there?» «He (to write) a book, I believe.» 8. He (to know) a lot of languages. 9. What you (to do) when you are by yourself? 10. «Ellen (to wait) for you.» «Yes. I know.» 11. Write him a note and see it (to be) delivered. 12. Why you (not to try) to rest now, Sam? Try and sleep. 13. I'm sorry you (not to feel) well, dear. 14. «I (to

start) work next week.» «And we all (to look) forward very much to having you in the office. You (to join) us at an interesting time.» 15. «Ray, come here a minute, will you?» «Oh, what you (to want)? Can't you see I (to watch) the telly?» 16. She asked George who hadn't moved: «Well, what you (to stand) there for? What you (to think) about?» 17. What sort of parts you (to play) on the stage? 18. «What you (to do) tonight?» «I don't know yet. I (to get) rather used to being at home every night.» 19. Jill (to be) rude to me. Why you (not to stop) her? 20. «You ever (to play) cards?» he asked. 21. «What we (to do) now?» «When it (to be) light we'll go back to the car.»

Ex. 10. Explain the use of Present Perfect in the following sentences:

1. Oliver came shyly up to him. «Sir, I've written a poem.» «Good,» said the headmaster. «May I see it?» 2. «Come on, ladies,» he shouted, «there's nothing to be afraid of. The mice have left the room.» 3. He thinks it's pure nerves and he's given me pills. 4. «Your hands are probably soiled. Go and wash them.» «I have washed them.» 5. Sam, what's come over you? You make me sad talking like this. 6. «Do you know the man?» «I've met him.» 7. «Where is Gladys?» «I've just had a message. Her aunt's had a stroke and she's had to go down to Somerset.» 8. «Well, it's very nice to see you anyway. I've been lonely.» 9. «I don't know if any of you are interested,» he said, «but the town has fallen.» 10. «Have you brought sandwiches?» «No.» «I don't know where I'll get lunch.» 11. «You look a bit shaken. Are you all right?» «It's been a pretty awful day, that's all.» 12. I don't know how often I've told you that I don't believe in this. 13. «Mother, I thought you wanted me to help with the sandwiches.» «I've finished the sandwiches.» 14. I've tried to be good. 15. As they saw off their last guest, he said to his wife: «I think everything has gone off fairly well, don't you?» «Everything has been perfect,» she declared. 16. «What do you know about the life in Quebec?» «Quite a lot. We have had letters from my uncle describing it.» 17. «Does your little daughter miss her nurse?» «No. She has forgotten her.» 18. «Are you keen on sailing?» «I have never done any.» 19. «You know, I'm thinking of writing my memories,» she said, «I've had an adventurous life.» 20. «Well, after all,» she said, «he knows he has been horrid to you and he is trying to make up for it.»

Ex. 11. Explain the use of the Past Indefinite in the following sentences:

1. Then a bomb hit close by. He felt himself being lifted. Then he was out. Later, he opened his eyes. He began to hurt and he didn't think about anything for a long time. 2. At home we heated soup. 3. A netting wire fence ran all around the house to keep out rabbits and deer. 4. My aunt looked after my father and they lived in our old house. 5. «Wow!» he said to the wide straw hat I wore. 6. He always smiled at children and gave them sweets. 7. But I never admired him much; he struck me as an ambitious and vain man of rather mediocre ability. 8. She had changed into a white summer dress and carried a big sun hat which she swung idly in one hand from a blue ribbon. 9. He moved across the lawn to the house and I followed him. The moonlight fell in streaks through the leaves. 10. He is a good teacher. Did you hear him on Columbus? I felt I was there! 11. You heard what he said. 12. She knew her brother would be still at the University where he lectured on physics. 13. That evening she had a date with a man who sold cosmetics. 14. He sat down and silently took one of the cigarettes from the desk. 15. In Port -au -Prince nobody walked at night. 16. The office smelt like a stage

dressing -room. 17. He collected books on Caribbean flora. 18. He added after a pause, «I saw you talking to the captain just now.» 19. He did his best to look after her; he took her out on long slow strolls; he saw that she went to bed early. 20. He decided that he would make sure that their promise came true.

Ex. 12. Use Present Perfect I or the Past Indefinite in the following sentences:

1. I never (to see) anyone more beautiful than your wife. 2. I (to meet) your husband this afternoon at Green Street. 3. He said, «You (to meet) this passenger. He calls himself Major Jones.» «I (to speak) to him.» 4. «I (to get) hold of some money - enough for Tony to go off for a couple of years.» «You (to raise) all that money by doing your own housework?» «No, of course not.» «Milly, what you (to be) up to? What you (to do)?» «I (to sell) the house.» «But what's Tony going to say? You (to tell) him?» «Why should he care? He's young.» «Why you (not to tell) him?» 5. I said, «Mr. Jones (to be) arrested by the police.» «My goodness. You don't say. What he (to do)?» «He necessarily (not to do) anything.» «He (to see) a lawyer?» «That's not possible here. The police wouldn't allow it.» 6. «You (to hear) the news?» «What news?» «About Ted and Dave. They (to be) out on the roof last night and Ted (to slip) and Dave (to try) to hold him but he couldn't and (to be) pulled off too. They're both in hospital with concussion and their people (to be) sent for.» 7. I understand you (to have) an unpleasant experience at the week -end? What (to happen) exactly? 8. You remember the coin you (to find) in the pool? 9. «Mr. Dillon (to arrive), Kate.» «Oh, good. You (to find) your way all right then, Mr. Dillon? I (not to hear) you ring the bell.» «I couldn't find the bell; so I (to knock) instead.» 10. He (to light) a cigarette and (to walk) to the window. 11. «Can we get dinner here?» «Of course we can. Have you got enough money? I (to spend) my last dollar on the taxi.» 12. You (to say) just now that time (to be) everything. What you (to mean) by that? 13. As we got into the taxi my brother asked, «Well, you (to speak) to Harry?» «I (to speak) to him for a moment.» 14. «Hallo,» the little girl said to her mother and looked at her companion. «Come and say 'How do you do' to Mr. Ogden.» «I (to see) him already.» «You can't have done, dear. He only just (to arrive) here.» «I (to see) him in the hall this afternoon.» «I'm sure you didn't. You (to see) my little daughter yet, Mr. Ogden?» «I don't think we (to meet) before,» said Mr. Ogden. 15. «I remember you (to have) three funny little freckles on your nose,» he said, «but they (to disappear).»

Ex. 13. Translate the following into English concentrating on the use of the Present Perfect and the Past Indefinite:

1. Она была одна, когда вошел ее муж. Он с удивлением оглядел комнату. «Что это?» - спросил он. - «Я переехала». Она улыбнулась ему. - «Дом еще не готов. Ты не можешь этого сделать». - «Я уже сделала это». 2. Когда Молли вошла в комнату, я сказал: «Я принес мой старый альбом с марками. Я встретил вашего мужа на крыльце. Он попросил меня оставить его вам». 3. «Добрый день», - сказал он. «Можно мне повидать Мэри?» - «Ее здесь нет, -ответила ее мать. - У меня был с ней разговор, который ей не понравился, и она уехала». 4. «Я позвонила доктору», - сказала его сестра, входя в комнату. Когда Роберт пришел в себя, он спросил: «Ты сказала, что позвонила доктору? Останови его, если возможно. Я совсем здоров. Я просто не могу себе представить, почему я

потерял сознание». 5. Где он? Я должен его увидеть. - Он ушел в лес. 6. Отец внизу? - Да. - Он ходил к Смитам? - Да. - Что сказал м-р Смит? - Отец его не видел. 7. Она встала из-за стола. «Я должна пойти запереть калитку. Уже стемнело». 8. «Посмотри, - сказал он, держа по щетке в каждой руке, - что мой двоюродный братец подарил мне! Он оставил их на моем туалетном столе». 9. Мальчик вышел и четким голосом прочитал стишок. Его мать заговорила первой. «Подойди сюда, - сказала она ему. - Кто научил тебя этому?» - «Я сам его придумал», - ответил мальчик. 10. Моей одежды нет в комнате. Они ее унесли.

Ex. 14. Use the Present Perfect Continuous or Present Perfect in the following sentences:

1. I (to be) busy since we last met. 2. I'm very fond of Alice but I (not to see) much of her lately. 3. «How quickly your mood changes! You look drained.» «I (to walk) around all day. I (to have) a few drinks and nothing to eat.» 4. But I (to cook, to clean) and (to dig) for three days and I'm tired. 5. «I don't think your mother expects you to become an electrician.» «What she (to say) to you?» «Nothing.» 6. Imagine how much they (to learn) since they (to be) here. 7. «Shall we sit down or do you prefer to stand?» «I (to sit) down in my office, so I am quite happy to stand.» 8. I found him waiting downstairs at the house door to let me in. «I'm sorry,» I said, «I hope you (not to stand) here long.» 9. There (to be) no guests at all since I left? 10. The other chap is a man who threw up his job ten years ago and he (not to work) since. 11. «My son is not a bad boy. But he's going through a difficult phase.» «He (to go) through this difficult phase for fifteen years.» 12. He's an old friend. I (to know) him for ages. 13. You (to see) anything of Mary lately? 14. Do you know of any good books coming out soon? I (not to read) anything amusing for ages. 15. I know the names of everyone in the village. I (to live) here all my life.

Ex. 15. Translate the following into English concentrating on the use of the Present Perfect and the Present Perfect Continuous:

1. Мы с вашим братом говорили сегодня об этом деле. Поэтому я и пришел повидаться с вами. 2. «Я все думал об этой книге, - сказал он, - и пришел к заключению, что мы не можем ее напечатать». 3. Грузовик все еще там? - Да. Они уже два часа работают, пытаются сдвинуть его. Но им это еще не удалось. 4. Что ты делала, Пэт? Ты вся в земле. 5. Ну, ты ведь слышала о Молли, да? - Я слышу о ней уже два года. 6. Последнее время я замечаю в тебе какие-то изменения. 7. Ну как ты? - Немного устала. Я весь день скребла стены. 8. Мальчишке требуется порка. Он уже много месяцев напрашивается на нее. 9. «Том и я, - сказала она весело, входя в комнату, - так хорошо развлекались сейчас. Мы смотрели альбомы». 10. Я очень доволен тем местом, которое выбрал. Я буду жить на ягодах и рыбе и читать все те книги, которые я давно хочу прочитать. - А где вы раздобудете их? - Я привез их с собой.

Ex. 16. Translate the following into English concentrating on the use of Present Perfect Continuous:

1. Когда они остались одни, она спросила: «Что здесь происходило?» 2. А что

если я попрошу Филипа одолжить мне денег? - Попробуй. Он только что ловил рыбу. Это подходящий момент. 3. Какие у тебя холодные руки, Мэри! - Да, я сидела у окна и проверяла тетради. 4. А вот ты где, Том! А я все искал тебя. Там какой -то молодой человек хочет видеть тебя. 5. При строгих родителях и двух старших братьях я всегда только и слышал, как кто-нибудь говорил мне: «Филип, тебе должно быть стыдно за себя». 6. Извини, что я опоздал, мама. Мне нужно было поехать в город и я попал под дождь и промок насквозь. Я переодевался. 7. «Эй! А где же все?» - «Я сейчас спущусь, - откликнулась Долли. - Я закрывала окна». 8. Он поблагодарил сестру за подарок и сказал: «Это как раз то, что мне нужно. Мое шерстяное белье все ест моль».

Ex. 17. To practice the Present Perfect Continuous, say what has just been happening to cause the state of things expressed in the following sentences:

1. His clothes are wet. (to walk in the rain)
2. You look upset, (to say dreadful things about)
3. I'm so glad to be able to talk to someone, (to have a very dull time)
4. Why do you think I ought to give up my work? (to talk to the doctor)
5. You look excited, (to try to talk someone out of doing something)
6. He is very tired, (to overwork)
7. The streets are wet. (to rain)
8. I can't write a loving letter now. (to write too many official papers)
9. The air in the room is hazy, (to smoke a great deal)

Ex. 18. Explain the use of the Present Perfect and the Past Indefinite in the following questions:

1. Why hasn't he let us know where he is? It simply isn't like him.
2. Why did you give your son that kind of education then?
3. «What time is it?» «Almost nine o'clock.» «Damn,» he swore. «Why didn't someone wake me?»
4. When did the tragedy occur?
5. «What's happened?» he thought. «How did they get here?»
6. «I'm going to see Mr. Warren,» she said. «He's in St Joseph's Hospital.» Her father turned from the TV. «What happened to him?» «He had an accident. He says it's nothing serious.»
7. Where's my hat? Where did I leave my hat?
8. «And I've got a bit of money. We could get ourselves a nice flat.» «Where did you get the money from?»
9. «Miss Drake,» he said later, «How long have you known Roger?» «Nearly a year. He's told me a lot about you.» «What did he say?»
10. «How long were you in hospital with that wound?» she asked.
11. «Well, this is a hell of a mess you have got into. I don't wonder you are upset.» «How did you find out?»
12. Then I thought of the other summer and of Laura. «How long did Laura stay there altogether?»
13. As Rosemary entered her room, her mother called to her: «Where have you been?»
14. When did she leave for a swim?
15. You seem to know a lot about your neighbors. How long have you lived here?

Ex. 19. Use the Present Perfect or the Past Indefinite in the following questions:

1. «I'll drink tea from this tin mug.» «Wherever you (to find) it?»
2. «What you (to hear)?» she demanded. «A farmer tells me he saw your brother walking back to the town.» «Why he (not to tell) us?» «He thought we knew.»
3. The parrot screamed a

few words in Hindi. «Where he (to learn) that?» my aunt asked me. 4. He showed her inside the house. «Oh, how lovely!» she exclaimed. «I had no idea it would be so lovely. Why you (not to tell) us? And you (to do) it all by yourself?» «Yes.» «How you (to manage) it? It's so tidy. And the new tea -set! When you (to buy) it?» 5. When Renny came in, his grandmother asked him: «Where you (to be) all day?» 6. «What sort of time you (to have) in France?» «A lot of things happened there.» 7. «Everyone in the village will talk about it.» «How this affair (to begin)?» 8. «How many children you (to teach) in that other family?» the girl asked her new governess. «Not many. Just one girl.» «How long you (to stay) with her?» 9. Then my mother asked me: «Why you (to go) to the post-office today?»

Ex. 20. Explain the use of the Present Perfect and the Past Indefinite in the following sentences containing an indication of a period of time:

1. «I hear you went to the dentist this morning.» «Yes. I had three teeth filled.» 2. He laughed. «My,» said Peggy, very pleased, «you got off the right side of the bed this morning, didn't you?» 3. That man was here again this afternoon, asking for you. 4. «Where is my brother?» «He's not been in all afternoon.» 5. At Corfu you find people playing cricket. Watching them you remember that Corfu was under British rule for fifty years and cricket, obviously, is a heritage of those days. 6. «Mr.. Ferrier wishes to speak to you on the telephone, Sir», she said. «He has called up three times this morning.» 7. «What's going on here?» Mel sighed: «We've had a storm for three days. It's created emergency situations.» 8. «Have you seen Mary this morning?» she asked the boy as she gave him his morning milk. «No. She is sick.» «How do you know?» «She didn't come out of her room.» 9. «I used to know the Pimleys. But I haven't seen them for years,» he said. 10. When they were strolling along the beach, Wilmott said to the doctor: «Do you know, I was surprised to hear you quote poetry this evening.» 11. I was an officer in the Territorials myself for a few years. I had to give it up for health reasons. 12. I've had a rather nasty pain in my knee at times lately. It caught me this morning in a devilish fashion. 13. She drew down his head and pressed her cheek to his. «I say, your cheek is like a grater! You have not shaved today.»

Ex. 21. Use the Present Perfect or the Past Indefinite in the following sentences which contain an indication of a period of time:

1. «Listen,» he said, «my father (to fight) for four years in the last war.» 2. I (to meet) your boy -friend and (to have) a long talk with him today. 3. «Don't go, Philip,» said his mother. «I scarcely (to see) you today.» 4. «Good morning, Mother,» he said kissing the top of her head, «you (to sleep) late this morning.» 5. I was at school with Alec. Then we (not to see) each other for years. 6. I (to have) coffee with a friend of yours at the Union today. 7. I'm taking my wife out tonight. She (not to have) any fun for a long time. 8. «Has Meggie eaten her tea?» «No. Not a bite. Nor dinner either.» «Why, this is awful. The child (not to have) a bite all day.» 9. Unsmiling she (to regard) him steadily for a long time. He then stopped walking about and looked equally steadily at her. 10. I dare say you (not to have) a night's sleep or a proper meal this week. 11. Entering her bedroom her mother said: «Pat, dear, aren't you well? Don't you think that a cup of tea would be nice? We (to have) the first strawberries this morning.» 12. «You (to see) Father this afternoon?» she asked coming in from the

garden. 13. You are just in time to hear a nice bit of news. Our neighbor is engaged to be married. He (to bring) me the news himself this morning. 14. «I'm sorry I'm late,» he said. «Everything (to seem) to hold me up this evening.»

Ex. 22. Translate the following into English concentrating, on the use of the Present Perfect and the Past Indefinite in sentences containing an indication of a period of time:

1. «Вы не можете мне сказать, уехала ли мисс Смит лондонским поездом сегодня утром?» - спросил он у начальника станции. - «Нет. Она опоздала на него». 2. Они проговорили около двух часов, и затем он сказал, что ему надо повидать кое-кого из друзей. 3. Его мать умерла. Она была учительницей долгие годы. 4. Послушай-ка, Джон, твоя хозяйка говорит, что ты лежишь в постели целый день сегодня. Это ведь не годится, правда? 5. Она удивилась, увидев его. «Разве ты не получил мое письмо?» - «Твое письмо? Нет». - «Да, конечно, ты еще не мог его получить. Я забыла. Оно было отправлено только сегодня утром». 6. Она резко повернулась к мужу и сказала: «Я отведу машину домой». - «Но ведь ты не водила машину много месяцев», - возразил он. - «Я еще не забыла, как это делается». 7. Мы все трое пошли вместе по улице. В течение некоторого времени все молчали. 8. «Дядя Том приезжает, - объявила Мег. - Мама получила от него письмо сегодня утром». 9. На этой неделе у меня едва было время, чтобы взглянуть на газеты. 10. «Тебе следует пойти навестить Вилли, - сказала она. - Ты не видел его три недели. Вы что поссорились?»

Ex.23. Use the Present Continuous or the Present Perfect Continuous in the following sentences:

1. «There's a man sitting at the first table near the door. He (to look) at us,» she said. «He is, but what of it?» «I (to meet) him everywhere of late.» 2. Ever since my University days I (to study) the history of Russia. Now I (to read) books on the Civil War. 3. I know you (to ask) for somebody with experience on your staff. There is a doctor in our laboratory who might interest you. But he now (to finish) an experiment. 4. «I (to visit) with friends.» «How long you (to stay) with your friends?» 5. The door was opened by Mrs. Pitt. «Well, well, you're just in time. I (to make) some cakes. And your father (to have) breakfast.» 6. «Where's my daughter?» «She (to talk) to a policeman.» «What's happened?» «She (to drive) without a license.» 7. «I hope you (to do) well?» «Splendid. I was very sorry that you left us. We (to do) better ever since.» 8. «Hello,» she said. «I'm glad you (to have) lunch here. I (to want) to talk to you.» 9. «We (to stay) here nearly a week.» «I hope you (not to think) of leaving.» 10. «The girl (to wait) to see you, doctor.» «How long she (to wait)?»

Ex. 24. Explain the use of Present Perfect III in the following sentences:

1. I'm tidying up for tomorrow. When I've finished this I'll go and put the child to bed. 2. As soon as we have had some tea, John, we shall go to inspect your garden. 3. I said, «Well, don't take him away until I've had a chance to speak to him.» 4. After we've done all the packing it will be nice to have a light meal. 5. I shall probably bore you to death by the time I've finished talking about myself. 6. I tell you flatly that unless something has been done about your brother I won't go to that house. 7. With a shrug

she said: «Their affair will fade into nothing before he's been here a week».

Ex. 25. Use the Present Perfect or the Present Indefinite in the following clauses of time referring to the future:

1. All right. I'll come down when I (to put) on a fresh collar. 2. When he (to be) off duty he'll go there. 3. «I must know where they are and I shall not rest till I (to see) them again,» he thought. 4. «No more,» she said to the dog, «but when I (to finish) you may have the bone.» 5. Go on with your picture. We'll have a look at it when we (to return) from the party. 6. «I'll hand the book over when I (to read) it,» he said. 7. «Has he gone?» she asked as soon as her sister entered. «No. He refuses to go till he (to see) you.» 8. I will not leave you till we (to talk) this thing out. 9. Nobody knows we are here. We may stay here till we (to die). 10. You won't think so when you (to see) a bit more of it. 11. I'll lock the door when you (to go). 12. When I (to wake) I'll go for a swim. 13. I know that when she (to refuse) to help him he'll make some scene. 14. I'll come when my guests (to go). 15. Please don't start watching TV till we (to have) supper. 16. You'll find it lonely here after the sun (to set). 17. Look, call him up again when he (to finish) eating. 18. «You'll find,» said Ted, «that you'll long for home when you (to leave) it.» 19. I'll keep it with me till we (to decide) what is to be done with it. 20. I'll give you some paper and brushes and let you make a picture when we (to ask) your mother,» she said to the girl.

Ex. 26. Revision: use one of the Present tense -aspect forms or the Past Indefinite in the following short situations:

1. «You (to know) the man for many years?» «Yes. We (to be) at Cambridge together.» 2. In the morning, coming down the stairs, Rosemary (to see) Tony lying in the sitting-room. «What you (to do) here?» «I (to sleep) here.» «I'm sorry we (to take) your room.» «I (to sleep) in my room for fifteen years.» «But this is a pretty room, isn't it?» «Yes. The sun (to be) in it since six this morning.» «You (to see) Philip? You (to know) where he is?» «I expect he (to talk) to Mother.» «Oh, well, they're old friends, aren't they?» «Inseparable. They (to start) quarrelling this morning at seven o'clock.» 3. «Are you keen on golf?» «I (not to play) myself. I somehow never (to have) the time.» 4. The pilot was young with a bad twitch that pulled his mouth to the right twenty times a minute. «This morning,» he kept saying, «this morning I (not to have) this. It (to get) worse and worse. It (to look) bad?» «No,» I said, «I hardly (to notice) it.» «I (to be) shot down by an American,» the pilot said. «The first American I ever (to see). I even (not to know) they (to be) here.» 5. «I'm sorry I (to keep) you waiting,» said the maid. «I do hope you (not to ring) long. I just (to do) the bedroom and the bell (to be) rather faint there.» 6. Turning I found my father sitting beside me on the sofa. «Hello, Dad,» I said, «how you (to get) here?» 7. «You (not to sing) the song once since you (to come) back,» Barbara complained. «I (to forget) it,» said Pat. 8. I (to sit) here all night, and I swear I (not to doze) for a moment. 9. «Mr.. Brown, we (not to want) you to misunderstand our leaving your hotel. We (to be) very happy here under your roof.» «I (to be) glad to have you. You (to catch) the Medea? She (to arrive) tomorrow.» «No. We won't wait for her. I (to write) out our address for you. We (to fly) to Santo Domingo tomorrow.» 10. Then about ten years ago he (to disappear) and I never (to hear) from him since. 11. «The gas stove is covered in

grease. It's filthy. Why you (not to clear) up after you had cooked breakfast? You even (to leave) the breakfast things in the sink.» 12. I can't think where I (to leave) my key. It's probably in my other bag. 13. You (to paint) any more pictures lately? 14. Then I (to come) here and I (to be) here since. 15. The general turned to my father and said abruptly: «You (to be) in the Boer war?»

Ex. 27. Revision: use one of the Present tense -aspect forms or the Past Indefinite in the following texts:

I. They returned to London on Monday night. Jan went straight to his office, she drove home, where Mrs. Bristow, the housekeeper, was smoking a cigarette and listening to the wireless.

«Everything (to be) all right?»

«Mrs. Troy (to go)»

«Where?»

«She (not to say). I (to help) her down with the bags. Oh, and she (to leave) you this
«The housekeeper gave her a letter.

«Darling, I (to be) sorry not to be here to say goodbye but I (to be) sure you will be quite pleased to have me out of your house at last. What an angel you (to be). I can never thank you or Jan enough. I (to leave) a little present to Jan. Let's meet soon and I'll tell you all about everything. All love. Virginia.»

«She (to leave) anything else, Mrs. Bristow?»

«Just two books. They (to be) upstairs.»

«Mrs. Troy (to leave) no address?»

«She (not to go) far. I (not to catch) what she (to say) to the taxi -driver but it (not to be) a railway station.»

The mystery (to be) soon solved. Jan (to telephone). «Good news,» he said. «We (to get) rid of Virginia.»

«I know.»

«For good. She (to be) a sensible woman. She (to do) just what I (to say) she should - she (to find) a husband.»

II. Drawing Roma to the arm of his chair, her uncle said to his guest: «This little girl (to be) my dead nephew Eden's daughter. Eden (to be) a poet, the first in the family to turn to things artistic. Of course, you (to hear) that young Christian (to turn) to painting. And Finch (to be) a concert pianist, and Wakefield (to be) an actor. And there (to be) a young man nearby who (to write). What is his name, Roma?»

«Humphrey Bell.»

«What's it. And what he (to write)?»

She answered, as though in a lesson: «Short stories in the American and Canadian magazines.»

«Well, well,» said the uncle, «before we (to know) it we shall have artists' colony here in place of the settlement of retired British officers we (to set) out with. You (to think) that will be a change for the better, Roma?»

«I (not to think) about it,» she returned.

III. Then, with the noise of the bombardment still echoing in his ears, he (to open) his

eyes and for a moment (can) see nothing but flashes of light.

«Fielden,» he (to call) wildly, and immediately a familiar voice (to reassure) him:

«You (to be) all right. You (to come) round. You (to feel) better, Frankie?»

He (to rub) his eyes and (to see) Fielden beside him. He was lying on a camp -bed in an unknown place amid a group of strange officers.

«I (to be) quite all right. But what (to happen)? Where I (to be)?»

«You (to be) in a dug -out. You (to be) buried by a bomb from a trench mortar.»

But how I (to get) here?»

«Someone (to drag) you out. I'm afraid four of your men (to be) killed and several others (to be) wounded.»

«My God!» (to cry) Frankie, struggling to sit up. «Anyone (to look) for them?»

«That's all right. We (to get) the wounded ones down to the dressing table long ago.

You (to be) unconscious for over an hour. The Doc's going to have a look at you and if you (to be) all right we shall take you back to your dug -out.»

IV. As they were drinking coffee Finch said, «Now tell me about yourself. How is your work?»

For a moment it (to seem) as though Bell could not bring himself to answer, then he (to get) out: «Not too badly. I (to write) a novel.»

«A novel,» Finch shouted. «Well, this is news. And it (to be) finished?»

«Yes. It (to be) finished. To tell the truth, it (to be) accepted by a publisher.»

«You (to work) on it long?»

«For over a year.»

Ex. 28. Explain the use of the Past Continuous in the following sentences:

1. The front door of the house stood open. The maid was polishing the windows. 2. After a while he informed me that John was doing a translation of some poems from Spanish. 3. I knew Harry was coming sometime on Monday. 4. You remember how he was always writing verses. 5. He glanced my way to see if I was listening. 6. By the time the month was up, Eric realized he was fighting a losing battle. 7. Roma said: «Hallo, everybody. We were passing and saw the light in the studio. We guessed you were having a party.» 8. She stopped beside Tommy who was in a particularly scornful mood. He was leaving in the morning. 9. Well, I was taught not to interrupt when older people were talking. 10. She said it very calmly but her face had gone the curious colour which meant that she wasn't liking it very much.

Ex. 29. Explain the use of the Past Continuous and the Past Indefinite in the following sentences which contain actions taking place at a given past moment:

1. We had some difficulty with Jerry, who was enjoying himself and did not want to come away. 2. He laughed and said how nice the country looked. Branches and little dark delicate twigs formed a fretwork of black lace against a cold, silvery sky. 3. It was getting dark now, and the general drove more slowly than ever. 4. I was driving along a country road when I spotted a telephone box. 5. I looked at my watch - it read five minutes to eleven. 6. I looked at my husband. He was reading a letter. 7. Philip made no haste to move from where he sat. 8. Lunch was over. Theo was smoking a cigarette. Barbara was sitting on the window seat with a book in her hands. 9. I rang the bell and

the door was opened by a small man in overalls who was carrying a pot of white paint. 10. In the dim light it was difficult for the passengers to read the papers they carried. 11. I offered to call him up but they told me that the telephone didn't work. 12. I looked into my father's study. He was no longer working. 13. John, turning from the door, noticed that he was standing upon a letter which lay on the mat.

Ex. 30. Use the Past Continuous or the Past Indefinite in the following sentences:

1. I (to have) an uncomfortable feeling that he (to laugh) at me. 2. They (to move) into the shelter. The rain (to come) down swiftly. 3. The general (to wait) on the platform when I (to arrive) at Camberley. 4. She (to be) on her guard because he always (to tease) her. 5. I only (to want) to know if you (to come) on Saturday. 6. He (to see) to it that their publishing house (to become) a flourishing firm again. 7. He (to have) a bath when the sirens (to start). 8. He (to walk) in the frosty fields when he (not to work). 9. Jack (to look) at her trying to guess what (to come). 10. The road under the limes (to lead) straight to the village. 11. He (to find) that he (to speak) in a low voice. 12. He (to be) surprised to find how much her hands (to shake). 13. It (to be) suddenly clear to me that she (to act) a part and (to amuse) herself at our expense. 14. Mother said you (to join) the Bombardier Guards. 15. I (to know) that they (to go) out that night.

Ex. 31. Use the Past Indefinite or the Past Continuous in the following sentences containing 'as' -clauses and 'while' -clauses:

1. They (to talk) little as they (to drive) home. 2. As they (to drink) coffee, Ted (to say): «Now tell me about yourself.» 3. She (to sing) softly as she (to beat) the eggs. 4. As the sun (to disappear), a fresh breeze (to stir) the curtains at the window. 5. His steps (to slow) down as he (to mount) the affairs. 6. I (to hear) a telephone ringing as I (to come) up in the lift. 7. He (to come) forward as we (to climb) out of the car and (to hold) his hand to my father. 8. Bernard (to call) up as I (to prepare) to leave the office. 9. He (to give) his father an anxious look as he (to enter). 10. She (to watch) him as he (to walk) to a chair across the room. 11. He (to look) up as Eric (to come) in. 12. Her husband (to stop) her just as she (to get) into the car. 13. While he (to stand) irresolute, the door (to open) and his brother (to come) out. 14. He (to listen) gravely while I (to complain) about my reading. 15. While she (to wait) for the kettle to boil she (to sit) by the table. 16. He (not to say) a word while we (to eat). 17. Mrs. Blair (to talk) about, domestic affairs, while the general (to lecture) my father on some subject which I didn't understand. 18. We (to look) at the stamps while we (to wait) for Hudson to turn up. 19. She (to tear) her dress while she (to change). 20. While we (to talk) Beryl (to come) out of the house.

Ex. 32. Translate the following into English concentrating on the use of the Past Continuous:

1. Холт выглянул в окно. Шел легкий дождь, и деревья поблескивали здесь и там в этом дожде. 2. Пока носильщик и шофер укладывали его вещи в машину, Джек закурил сигарету. 3. В этот момент он увидел своего брата. Он стоял по другую сторону стеклянных дверей. 4. Женщина что-то сказала мальчику, который шел рядом с ней. 5. Когда мальчик заснул, он все еще держал новую игрушку. 6. Он проснулся. Возле его кровати звонил телефон. 7. Джо был доволен, что его брат

теперь вел машину медленнее. 8. Она сидела в глубине комнаты, лицом к двери. На ней было то же самое платье, и она смело смотрела на группу из трех мужчин, которые стояли в другой стороне комнаты. Когда Джек подошел к ней, она улыбнулась ему. Он ясно чувствовал, что трое мужчин наблюдают за ним.

Ex. 33. Revision: use one of the Present tense -aspect forms or the Past Indefinite or the Past Continuous in the following sentences:

1. «He (to like) you?» «Like me? He never even (to see) me when we (to meet). He (to look) straight through me. The other day I (to pass) him by near the lake; he just (to stare) at the sky. I said «Hello, David.» He even (not to bother) to look my way.» 2. On the 1 -st of September, 1939, I (to lunch) with my father. And I (to try) to explain to him something of the work I (to do). In the middle of the meal the telephone (to ring) and my father (to answer) it. Then he (to come) back and (to say): «Philip (to say) the war (to start).» 3. Through the arch I (to see) Simon. He (to lie) on the ground. He (to have) a cut which (to bleed) a lot. A few people (to stand) around. His friend, at the top of his voice, (to yell): «You (to hurt) him!» One of the crowd (to say): «I (not to touch) him.» As I (to come) up Simon (to open) his eyes and (to say), «What on earth (to happen)?; Where I (to be)?» 4. It (to be) evening, Jessica (to go) to the window and (to look) out. A Siamese cat (to walk) slowly along the top of the garden wall. A newspaper boy (to deliver) the evening papers. A student (to polish) his old car. Two dogs who had just met (to wag) their tails. She (to turn) away from the window and (to go) back to her desk. 5. While we (to eat) our sandwiches and (to drink) a glass of beer Kathy (to smile) at me and (to say): «Well, you (to enjoy) the book?» 6. He is the sort of chap who always (to look) at a clock. 7. The snow (to melt) as it (to touch) the ground. 8. It's funny that all these years he never (to bother) to see you. 9. Oh, what a gorgeous piano! You (to play) since you (to come) home, Uncle Harry? 10. Barbie (to lay) the table while I (to fry) the fish. 11. At the end of the week she (to write) what she (to return). 12. You (not to understand) what your mother (to have) to put up with these twenty years. 13. When I (to save) up enough, I shall be able to study law. 14. What you (to be) up to all day while I (to be) busy? 15. When you (to translate) that, I shall sign it.

Ex. 34. Revision: use one of the Present tense -aspect forms or the Past Indefinite or the Past Continuous in the following texts:

I. Pat (to leave) the house and (to go) along a sandy path leading to the vegetable garden. Soon she (to see) that someone (to move) among the tomato plants. Coming closer she (to recognize) Humphrey Bell. «Hallo,» Pat (to call) out. «You (to get) tomatoes, eh?»

He (to straighten) himself. «Yes, and I (not to be) the thief I (to look). Your uncle (to tell) me to help myself.» He (to show) her the basket half full of tomatoes. «I really (to take) more than I (to need).»

«I'll help you,» said Pat and without waiting for his reply she (to begin) to gather the tomatoes.

«You (to look) unusually elegant,» he said.

«We (to have) a family dinner party. But they'll not miss me. As a matter of fact, the party is rather scattered. The young people (to pair) off and (to stroll) about.»

«Then I (to consider) myself lucky that you (to pair) off with me - in the vegetable garden.»

«It (not to sound) very romantic,» she said. «How you (to get) on with your writing? You yourself (to like) what you (to write)?» «Yes. I do.» He (to speak) with conviction.

II. The old servant (to come) in with a tray of clean glasses. As he (to see) Maurice standing in front of the window he (to say): «The party (to go) off nicely, I hope, Sir.»

«Very nicely,» said Maurice, amiably.

«There's nothing like a nice family party, I always say.»

«You ought to know,» Maurice said. «You (to have) plenty of experience.»

«Oh, yes. I (to work) in this house more than thirty years.»

«That's a long while to stick to one job.»

«You're right, Sir. I'll be sorry to leave.»

«Surely you (not to leave), Rags.»

«My wife and I (to take) a year off. We (to go) to London.»

«If you (to spend) a year there you'll never come back,» Maurice exclaimed.

«We (to save) a bit. We may stay there as long as we like.»

«My uncle (to know) this?»

«I (to tell) him this morning.»

III. For a moment Adeline could not speak. Then she (to bring) all her self-control and (to say) in a shaking voice: «I (to break) off my engagement.»

«Yes?» her father said quietly. «How it (to come) about?»

«Mait and I (to quarrel).» She, too, now (to speak) quietly.

«Yes? And then?»

«I (to go) for a walk. I (to have) to be alone. When I (to come) back I (to be) told that Mait had gone with Roma to the lake. I (to follow) them. They (to bathe) there, in the lake. Then he (to take) Roma in his arms and (to kiss) her.»

«What you (to do)?» her father asked sharply.

«I ... I (to stone) them.»

«You (to mean) you actually (to throw) stones?» he asked in amazement.

«Yes.»

«You (to hit) them?»

«There (to be) blood on his face.»

«What he (to do)?»

«He (to come) out of the water and (to try) to explain, but I (to tell) him all (to be) over between us and (to go) off.»

Ex. 35. Revision: use of the Present tense -aspect forms or the Past Indefinite or the Past Continuous in the following text:

A knock at the door (to arouse) Martin. He (to think) about Joe and (to wonder) where he (to be), as he (to say): «Come in.» He (not to turn) toward the door. He (to hear) it close softly. There (to be) a long silence. He (to forget) there had been a knock at the door, and (to stare) blankly before him when he (to hear) a woman's sob. The next instant he (to be) on his feet. «Ruth,» he said, amazed. Her face (to be) white and

strained. He (to lead) her to a chair and (to draw) up another one for himself. He (to be) too confused to speak. In his own mind his affair with Ruth (to be) closed and sealed.

«No one (to know) I (to be) here,» Ruth said in a faint voice.

«What you (to say)?» Martin asked.

She (to repeat) her words.

«Oh,» he said, then (to wonder) what more he could possibly say.

«I (to see) you come in, and (to wait) a few minutes,» Ruth continued.

«Oh,» he said. «And then you (to come) in.»

She (to nod). Then she (to come) over to him, (to rest) her hand on his shoulder a moment and then (to slip) into his arms.

He (to know) now what she had come for.

«My mother (to want) me to marry Charlie Hapgood,» she announced.

Martin then said, «And now, I suppose, your mother (to want) you to marry me.»

«She will not object. I (to know) that much,» Ruth said.

«She (to consider) me quite eligible?»

Ruth (to nod).

«And yet (to be) not a bit more eligible now than I (to be) when she (to break) our engagement. I (not to change). I (not to get) a job. I (not to look) for a job. And I still (to believe) that Judge Blount (to be) an ass. I (to have) dinner with him the other night, so I ought to know.»

«But you (not to accept) Father's invitation,» she said.

«Who (to send) him? Your mother?»

Ruth (to remain) silent.

«Then she (to send) him. And now I suppose she (to send) you.»

«No one (to know) I (to be) here,» she protested. «Oh, Martin, don't be cruel. You (not to kiss) me once. And think what I (to dare) to do!»

«Why you (not to dare) it before,» he asked, «when I (not to have) a job? When I (to starve)? That's the question I (to put) to myself all this time. You see I (not to change). I (to be) the same. I (not to develop) any new virtue. And what (to puzzle) me is why everybody (to want) me now. Surely they (not to want) me for myself but for something that (to be) outside me. It is for the recognition I (to receive). Then again for the money I (to earn).»

«You (to break) my heart,» she sobbed. «You (to know) I (to love) you.»

«If you (to love) me,» he said gently, «then why your love (to be) weak enough to deny me?»

«Forget and forgive,» she cried. «I (to love) you all the time.» «Oh, you (to do) nothing that (to require) forgiveness,» he said impatiently.

They (to sit) in silence for a long time. He (to know), now, that he had not really loved her.

Ruth suddenly (to begin) to speak. «I know that much of what you (to say) is so, I (not to love) you well enough. In the last ten minutes I (to learn) much. I (to learn) to love better.»

«It's too late,» he said. «I (to be) a sick man. It is my soul. I (to care) for nothing. Something (to go) out of me.» Martin (to lean) his head back and (to close) his eyes. He (to forget) the presence of Ruth.

He (to be) brought back to himself by the rattle of the door -knob. Ruth (to try) to open the door.

«Oh, forgive me,» he cried, rising to his feet. «I (to forget) you (to be) here. I'll take you home.»

Ex. 36. Explain the use of the Past Perfect in the following sentences and describe the character of the action expressed by it:

1. He asked me if I had had breakfast. 2. He now opened the low gate that he had so often swung on as a small boy. 3. At last she showed me the letter he had written. 4. She was sure that he had never lied to her before. 5. He knew that as a girl she had lived in Rome. 6. Jack chose the hotel. He had never been there before but he had heard his mother speak of it once. She had said she had liked it. 7. He was pleased to meet Dave again. He had known him for ten or eleven years, and they had played tennis together in Paris. 8. Jack explained that the head of the studio in Hollywood had given him the name of James Royal, although he had already played on the stage in New York under his own name. 9. He remembered how the ball had hit squarely on the nose and the bleeding hadn't stopped for three hours. 10. They had been married only a few months when they gave up living in London. 11. He glanced up and down the beach to see if he had left anything. 12. She realized that she was faint for food. She had eaten nothing since the picnic. 13. After the evening meal Mr. Graig proposed a game of cards. He had not played cards since his illness. 14. He quite forgot that Julian had been divorced for some time. 15. He decided to wait till he had talked to the man himself. 16. He was not aware how long he had sat there. 17. I called at nine and the man said she had gone out about an hour ago. 18. We went to see Mr. Fennel who had been a widower for two years. 19. I knew he would ask me for news of his son as soon as he had seen the last guest off. 20. It happened that his desire to go to France fell in with certain ideas which had been of late discussed at the committee.

Ex. 37. Use Past Perfect I or the Past Indefinite in the following sentences:

1. From downstairs (to come) the sound of a radio playing a song he never (to hear) before. 2. He (to re-read) what he (to write). 3. I (to know) he (to make) a joke because he (to giggle) but I could not see it. 4. I was going round to see Roberta after dinner. I (to arrange) this visit the day before. 5. As she (to rise), there (to shoot) through his mind something that he (to read) in the etiquette books, and he (to stand) up awkwardly, worrying as to whether he (to do) the right thing, and fearing that she might take it as a sign that he (to be) about to go. 6. When she (to enter) the house at dinner-time and (to find) Tom gone she (to know) what (to happen), He (to leave) no note, nor any message. She (to know) that in the last moment he even (not to think) of her, and she (not to be) hurt by it. In whatever way he could, he (to love) her. 7. I (to press) the door gently. It always (to be) left open at night in the old days. When I (to become) quite certain that it (to be) locked, I (to step) back into the moonlight and (to look) up at the house. Although it (to be) barely midnight, there (to be) not a light showing. They (to be) all abed and asleep. I (to feel) a resentment against them. I (to expect) them to welcome me back at the door. 8. On the fifteenth of October Andrew (to set) out alone for London. Now that the exam (to be) so close at hand, he (to feel) that he (to know) nothing. Yet, on the following day when he (to begin) the written

part of the examination, he (to find) himself answering the papers with a blind automatism. He (to write) and (to write), never looking at the clock, filling sheet after sheet. He (to take) a room at the Museum Hotel, where Christine and he (to stay) on their first visit to London. Here it (to be) extremely cheap. But the food (to be) bad. Between his exams he (to live) in a kind of daze. He scarcely (to see) the people in the street. After the written part, the practical part of the examination (to begin); and Andrew (to find) himself dreading this more than anything which (to go) before. Luckily his practical part (to go) well enough. His case (to be) an illness which he (to treat) before. He (to feel) that he (to write) a good report.

Ex. 38. Translate the following into English concentrating on the use of the Past Perfect:

Я оделся и вышел в сад. Выходило солнце. Ветра не было, но в саду все падали листья. Березы за одну ночь пожелтели до самых верхушек.

Я вернулся в дом. Там было тепло. Маленькая береза, которую принес мой сын и которую мы посадили в кадучку, стояла у окна. Вдруг я заметил, что она тоже за одну ночь вся пожелтела и несколько листьев уже лежало на полу.

Комнатная теплота не спасла березку. Через день она облетела вся. Мой сын и все мы были очень огорчены. Мы уже свыклись с мыслью, что она останется зеленой всю зиму. Лесничий только улыбнулся, когда мы рассказали ему, как мы пытались спасти зеленую листву березки.

Ex. 39. Explain the use of the Past Perfect Continuous in the following sentences:

1. When I rang up your father, he said that people had been inquiring about you all day. 2. Pat's poodle now appeared, coming out of the stream where it had been cooling. 3. They had been driving for half an hour before Blair spoke. 4. He went to the theatre to see the play which had been running for a week. 5. The rain that had been threatening now began to fall gently. 6. Philip came into the room. He had been wandering about, not quite belonging anywhere. 7. When she came there to act as governess, the children had been running wild for a year. 8. Alice threw down the book she had been holding since she came into the room.

Ex. 40. Explain the use of Past Perfect Continuous and Past Perfect II in the following sentences:

1. I did not remember much about the Pirnleys, whom I had not seen for about ten years. 2. It had been freezing for the last few days, but it had not snowed. 3. He told me he had not heard from her since the day she walked out of their office. 4. He said that they had now been hunting hard for ten days. 5. She was aware that they had been getting on each other's nerves lately. 6. I was happy that ever since Max moved in here, the place had been ringing with laughter. 7. He said frankly that he had been thinking about the offer for a long time now but he hadn't discussed it with his wife yet. 8. I knew they had known each other since the war and had now been corresponding for years. 9. It seemed to me that I had done nothing since I arrived. 10. I told him I had been in all evening. I had been waiting to talk with him.

Ex. 41. Use the Past Perfect Continuous or Past Perfect II in the following sentences:

1. Her name was Logan. She (to be) a widow for fifteen years and had no children. 2. He wanted to find out how long the two men (to stay) with them. 3. We talked about what we (to do) since we left school. 4. The last member of the party was Neville, the film star, whom David (to know) for some time. 5. The bearded man told him that the partisans (to import) arms for some time now. 6. We told them that in our absence the garden (to be) looked after by an old man who (to live) in the area since the Boer war. 7. Now they were floating in the little green boat upon the perfectly calm sea in which they lately (to swim). 8. Jack was half an hour late and he asked what we (to eat) because he wanted to order the same. 9. Basil said that he (to write) all 'day and (not to eat) anything. 10. She said she (not to see) him since he was in his first year at the university. 11. Her lack of accent was explained by the fact that she (to be) for twenty years in London. 12. It was cold and dark in the small room because it (to rain) for five days. 13. He said he (to have) the statuette for a long time. 14. The noise woke Joe who (to sleep) in his pram by the garage door. 15. I went into the kitchen. Nothing (to be) touched in it since the morning before.

Ex. 42. Translate the following into English concentrating on the use of Past Perfect Continuous II:

1. Он поднял голову от полу холодной чашки кофе, который он все помешивал, но не пил. 2. Том никак не хотел, чтобы его мать знала, что мы все это время делали. 3. Она видела по их мокрым костюмам, что они только что плавали. 4. Люди, которых она встречала, казалось, знали, где она была и что она там делала. 5. Она посмотрела на Бертю, которая мяла бумагу, на которой кто-то перед этим пробовал свою самопишущую ручку. 6. Когда он вернулся, мы постарались сделать вид, что мы говорили не о нем. 7. Макс поднял книгу, которую он перед этим читал, и загнул уголок страницы, чтобы отметить место. 8. Я сидела на кухне и курила. Флора, которая играла в гостиной, пришла посмотреть, что я делаю.

Ex. 43. Use Past Perfect III or the Past Indefinite in the following clauses of time:

1. He wanted her to believe that when he (to return) things would change. 2. She knew that he would not speak till they (to reach) their house. 3. She took her manicure set and began to do her nails, waiting till he (to finish) eating. 4. He decided to read nothing but the dictionary until he (to master) every word of it. 5. And then came the great idea -he would write. He would begin as soon as he (to get) back. It would be slow succeeding at first. He would go on studying. And then after some time, when he (to prepare) himself he would write great things. 6. She asked if Grant would wait until the doctor (to see) the patient. 7. She told him not to come back until he (to talk) to her on the telephone first. 8. He would have to make a decision sooner or later, but he wanted it to be as late as possible, when the other problems (to be) solved. 9. I said we'd better leave this little chat until I (to make) coffee. 10. He did not sign the contract until he (to drag) a formal approval out of me. 11. He said he'd tell me all about it when he (to get) back.

Ex. 44. Revision: use one of the Present or Past tense -aspect forms in the following sentences:

1. It was early evening. John, who (to be) in bed until half an hour ago, (to wear) his silk gown. A fire (to burn) in the grate which he (to lay) and (to light) himself. 2. Mr.. Wrangle: «Why does a woman say she (to shop) when she (not to buy) a thing?» Mrs. Wrangle: «Why does a man say that he (to fish) when he (not to catch) anything?» 3. When she (to go) out of the room Jack (to stand) just outside the door, and she (to have) the impression that he (to try) to listen to what her father (to say) in the room. 4. She (to find) the family on the beach. Theo (to sit) on the sand beside his clothes. Pierce, who (to swim), (to lie) limply on the pebbles, half in and half out of the water. The dog, who (to swim) with Pierce, (to shake) itself and (to spray) rainbow drops on Pierce's trousers. The cat, who (to fluff) itself into a woolen ball, (to watch) the dog. Paula and John (to get) fully dressed and (to walk) slowly along the beach. 5. Martin Eden asked Ruth: «I wonder if I can get some advice from you. You remember the other time I (to be) here I (to say) I (can) not talk about books and things because I (not to know) how. Well, I (to do) a lot of thinking since. I (to be) to the library many times, but most of the books I (to read) (to be) too hard for me to understand. Maybe I'd better begin at the beginning. I never (to have) any advantages. I (to work) pretty hard ever since I (to be) a kid and now that I (to be) to the library, looking with new eyes at books, I just (to conclude) I (not to read) the right kind. 6. She (to realize) that she (to be) so interested in what Jack (to say) that she (to forget) to eat. 7. «I (to mean) to call you up,» Pete said, wanting to get away, «but I (to be) busy.» 8. As we (to approach) the corner we (to fall) silent. 9. They (to walk) for less than an hour when the moon, which (to pass) its first quarter, suddenly (to appear) between the heavy clouds. 10. Her parents (to live) in Florence and she (to visit) them every week -end. 11. Eric, who (to pace) the room, (to stop) behind the chair and (to lean) on it, when his father (to tell) him to come up to his desk. 12. He (to remember) that his mother (to meet) her first husband when she (to work) in a New York publishing house. 13. «Hello,» she said, «I'm glad you (to have) lunch here. I (to want) to talk to you.» 14. «How's your sister?» «I (not to know) anything about her.» «Why you (to stop) going to see her?» 15. When news of his uncle's illness (to reach) him, Wake (to be) in New York. He (to act) in a play that (to have) a success in London. 16. He is not in very high spirits. He (to stay) up many nights cramming for an examination he (to fear) he is going to fail. 17. As he (to pay) his bill his brother (to come) up. 18. The lights were switched off and she (to sit) in the glow of the wood fire and he (to have) the impression that she (to cry). 19. «I (to be) on pension for a few years now.» «Why they (to give) you a pension? What war you (to be) in?» 20. Nick had to repeat that he (to have) a letter from his sister and that she and her husband (to sail) the following week for Canada.

Ex. 45. Use the required Past tense -aspect forms in the following sentences which pattern actions related to the same past moment:

1. Grant just (to change) into some dry things and (to wait) for dinner to be announced when there was a knock at the door. 2. Then we realized that Richard (to come) in through the garden and (to stand) in the room listening. 3. Outside on the square it (to stop) raining and the moon (to try) to get through the clouds. 4. Saturday lunch was

over. Mary still (to sit) at the table smoking. Kate and John (to retire) to the sofa and (to talk) in low voices. Paula and the twins (to go) out on to the lawn where the twins now (to play). Barbara (to sit) on the window -seat reading «Country Life». 5. When Roger returned into the room, the girl (to stop) crying but (to shiver) from head to foot. 6. Then she saw her father. He (to lay) his fishing rod and (to take) something from his pocket. 7. Bernard (to take) off his hat and (to carry) it in his hand. 8. When the telephone rang Wolfe (to finish) his egg and (to drink) coffee. 9. It was dark by the time I reached London. The black -out (to begin) and it (to rain) heavily. 10. Pierce (to tow) the boat quite fast now. The dog, who (to swim) out after him, (to accompany) the boat.

Ex. 46. Translate the following into English bringing out the difference between sentences which pattern actions related to the same past moment and those containing consecutive actions:

1. Он снова положил руки на стол и посмотрел на них. 2. Он снова положил руки на стол и глядел на них. 3. Мальчик бросил лодку и поплыл к берегу. 4. Мальчик бросил лодку и плыл к берегу. 5. Они закончили еду и пили кофе. 6. Она поела и отнесла тарелки на кухню. 7. Они вышли из кино и пошли вверх по улице. 8. Они вышли из кино и шли вверх по улице. 9. Вокруг всей площади стояли люди, а мальчишки залезли на деревья. 10. Джо спустился в холл и ждал своего приятеля. 11. Ветер прекратился, а дождь все шел. 12. Дети потеряли мяч в высокой траве и искали его. 13. Ветер сдул с него шляпу, и она катилась по улице. 14. Ветер сдул с него шляпу, и Лола покатила по улице. 15. Мэри нашла старую шляпу и стала ее примерять. 16. Мэри нашла старую шляпу и примеряла ее.

Ex. 47. Use the required Past tense -aspect forms in the following complex sentences with «when» -clauses:

1. When he (to see) Bell he (to come) straight to him, smiling. 2. When Jimmy (to get) to the cafe a little late, Christine (not to arrive) yet. 3. When Ted (to turn) to thank the doctor, he already (to walk) away. 4. When she (to walk) she (to carry) herself like a ballet -dancer. 5. We (not to walk) a hundred yards towards the cottage when the inspector suddenly (to go) down on his knees. 6. One afternoon I went to play tennis with some neighbors and when I (to return) my mother (to disappear). 7. When she (to smile), she (to seem) friendly and simple. 8. When I (to go) down to Hugh's room he (to sit) at his table reading a small book. 9. When Paula (to tidy) up she (to go) out of doors. 10. I (to meet) her on the beach when I (to have) my early walk. 11. When he (to finish) speaking, everyone (to clap). 12. I (to have) a good sleep when I (to get) back yesterday. 13. The play (to be) in progress for about twenty minutes when Grant (to find) his seat at the back of the dress circle. 14. When Jack (to look) back, the Holts (to dance) cheek to cheek. 15. «How do you like that?» he (to ask) her when he (to finish) painting. 16. When she (to come) back, he (to eat) the sandwiches. 17. I (to do) the washing when she (to arrive). 18. When Theo (to go) for a walk he (to look) exclusively at his own feet. 19. I (not to go) very far from the turn -off when I (to notice) there was a car behind me. 20. When they (to go) I (to go) to the woods.

Ex. 48. Use the required Past tense -aspect forms in the following complex sentences with «as soon as» -clauses:

1. He (to telephone) to his office as soon as he (to reach) his house. 2. «I (to come) as soon as I (to get) your message,» Lloyd said. 3. He always (to dislike) anybody as soon as he (to be) appointed to a position of authority. 4. He (to dial) the number but (to replace) the receiver as soon as the familiar voice (to answer) the telephone. 5. David (to disappear) as soon as we (to have) breakfast. 6. As soon as I (to hear) the sound I (to know) what had happened. 7. He (to open) the letter as soon as he (to enter) the room. 8. As soon as he (to enter) I (to be) struck by the expression on his face.

Ex. 49. Use the required Past tense -aspect forms in the following complex sentences with «after» -clauses:

1. After they (to have) coffee Meg (to invite) him to go over the house. 2. She (to see) him every day after we (to arrive) in New York. 3. After we (to lunch) we (to go) and (to sit) out in the garden. 4. There (to be) another raid in the early hours of the morning after we (to go) to bed. 5. After he (to take) the girl home, he (to go) down the road to the village. 6. I (cannot) stay in Wales after what (to happen). 7. After she (to go), Willy (to lock) the door and (to go) into the bedroom. 8. There (to be) a short silence after he (to leave).

Ex. 50. Use the required Past tense -aspect forms in the following complex sentences with «till/until» -clauses:

1. Neither of us (to speak) until we (to arrive) at the office. 2. She (not to speak) until the steps (to move) on. 3. Savina (to say) nothing until they (to order) but Eric knew she was waiting. 4. He (to wait) until he (to hear) a hello from the other end of the telephone. 5. She (to wait) motionless until he (to finish) his speech. 6. So I (to go) on searching until I (to select) a dozen books that I wanted to read. 7. She (to wait) until he (to shave) and (to finish) dressing. 8. His anger (to last) till his wife (to put) the soup on the table. 9. Then he (to go) out to the reading -room and (to explore) magazines until the place (to close) at ten o'clock. 10. Nicole (to wait) silently till he (to pass); then she went on.

Ex. 51. Use the required Past tense -aspect forms in the following complex sentences with «before» -clauses:

1. He (to stumble) against the chair before he (to find) the lamp. 2. He (to decide) to get a present for his children before he (to leave) Rome. 3. He (to begin) apologizing before I (to pay) the driver. 4. The noise of their footsteps (to become) distant before my father (to speak) again. 5. He (to knock) and (to ring) for some time before he (to make) himself heard. 6. He (to walk) quite close to them before he (to speak). 7. They (not to go) four miles before Tony (to get) the impression that the children liked driving with him. 8. I (to realize) before you (to be) here a fortnight that you never were cut out for this life. 9. Miss Able (to hunt) everywhere for the box before she (to find) it. 10. Almost before I (to shut) my eyes, I (to feel) a nudge in my side. 11. The next morning Hudson (to come) into my room before I (to finish) breakfast. 12. She looked so cool and fresh that he (to spend) a moment admiring her before he (to speak). 13. He (to hang) around the theatre for seven years before he (to have) any

recognition at all. 14. He (not to be) there for two days before he (to say) that the wish to see her had been the reason for his coming. 15. She went, unwillingly, at the end of the week. Before she (to be) gone twenty four hours he (to find) his mistake. 16. He (to know) before he (to say) this that it would annoy her. 17. On the beach they (to find) a suitable place for lunch before they (to go) very far. 18. In the summer Willy often (to take) very early walks by the sea before anyone (to be) up. 19. Thank God I (to find) it out before I (to make) more of a fool of myself. 20. The bus (to begin) to move before he (to reach) it.

Ex. 52. Use the required Past tense -aspect forms in the following complex sentences containing the correlatives 'scarcely' 'hardly' 'nearly' 'barely' 'when' and 'no sooner ... than':

1. She hardly (to sit) down when a very stout gentleman wearing a very small hat (to flop) into the chair opposite hers. 2. He hardly (to reach) the door of his office when he (to encounter) two young men. 3. He emerged from the theatre with the first of the crowd; but he scarcely (to take) his position on the edge of the sidewalk when the girls (to appear). 4. He barely (to disappear) when Dennis (to come) sliding down the stairs. 5. No sooner, however, they (to establish) themselves in their new house than he (to perceive) to his dismay a return of her absorbed and brooding manner. 6. He barely (to arrive) in Rome when he (to get) a telegram from home that his father was seriously ill. 7. No sooner the curtain (to fall) than he (to rise) to go. 8. Hardly he (to ask) his questions when she (to answer) them. 9. He scarcely (to take) his coat off when he (to begin) to read the letter. 10. The band barely (to begin) to play when he (to go) away. 11. The rain nearly (to stop) when he (to reach) his hotel. 12. They barely (to come) out of the house when a sudden shouting (to arise).

Ex. 53. Use the required Present or Past tense -aspect forms in the following sentences containing the adverbs 'scarcely', 'hardly', 'nearly' and 'barely':

1. Haven't we got enough junk in the house already? There (to be) barely room to move as it is. 2. David got really angry and beat his fist on the wall. Bits of plaster began to fall thick on the floor. «How amazing!» he said. «I hardly (to touch) it.» 3. When the train got in, it (to be) nearly midnight. 4. I heard his father say: «I scarcely (to speak) to my son today.» 5. Charles became impatient. He scarcely (to have) time to listen to our congratulations. 6. Last summer I very nearly (to go) to Spain. 7. There (to be) scarcely anyone there whom I knew. 8. Charles did not hope to become a doctor. He (to be) nearly twenty six. 9. This was the side of my life he scarcely (to know). 10. I scarcely (to have) a glass of water since breakfast. 11. I asked her about her plans. But she scarcely (to listen). 12. I saw that all the family nearly (to come) to a disaster. 13. After ten minutes of the film, during which the star barely (to get) into her clothes, Ann rose to go. 14. I scarcely (to know) him up to the time I came to London. 15. The man (to be) hardly recognizable. 16. Grant hardly (to have) enough time to examine the room before the landlady came back. 17. You (to have) hardly any right to talk to me about these children. 18. He looked at -his brother for agreement, but Philip barely (to move) his head. 19. I hardly (to see) him this week. 20. I (to be) nearly through with my work.

Ex. 54. Revision: use the required Present or Past tense -aspect forms in the following texts:

I. He (to find) his father about to lunch, and they (to sit) down together. Making sure that the waiter (not to look) over his shoulder, Ronny, who (to bring) the book with him, (to push) it over, and (to say), «You (to read) it?» His father (to shrug): «Everybody now (to read) it.»

II. Tom (to whitewash) the fence for some time when he (to see) Jim coming out of the gate. Jim (to go) to the town pump for water. Bringing water from the pump always (to be) hateful work for Tom, but it (not to seem) so now. Tom (to offer) to fetch the water instead of Jim, but the latter (to shake) his head and (to say) that he (to do) this work so long that he (to get) used to it.

III. It (to be) Saturday evening after supper. The big brightly lit kitchen (to be) silent except for the click of dominoes. The shutters (to be) closed and barred. The long rows of blue dishes on the dresser (to gleam) like sea water. At the long table the boys (to play) dominoes. Miranda (to go) to bed. Ann (to sew). Hugh (to smoke) his pipe and (to watch) the others. Every now and then Ann (to look) up and (to smile) at him. She certainly (to be) bravely 'cheerful' in a way that (to compel) everybody 's admiration. By a kind of inertia things slowly (to come) back to normal. The danger point (to be) passed by now. Hugh (to think) that tomorrow he (can) decently tell the family that he (to leave) on Tuesday.

IV. When Tom (to wake) the farmhouse (to burn). It (to start) burning when the shell (to hit). None of the other soldiers who (to be) in the farmhouse (to be) to be seen. They (to be) lucky to escape. In the confusion they (to miss) Tom who (to sleep) on the kitchen floor. As his leg (to be) broken it (to take) him hours to crawl across the room to the window. He (to pass) out again and again. But he (to be) sure he (not to want) to die and finally he (to get) to the window and (to pull) himself up so that he (can) look over the sill. Somebody (to see) his head above the window and (to get) him. Tom (not to remember) any of that. He never (to find) out who (to save) him.

V. She (to be) in the lobby when he (to come) out of the elevator. She (to talk) to another woman and she (not to see) him for a moment and he (to have) an opportunity to study her and observe what the years (to do) to her. She (to put) on weight and the old sharpness of her face (to be) gone. Her beauty (to diminish), and she (to be) transformed into a robust matron.

VI. Although it (to be) early afternoon the airport (to look) gloomy. The plane from New York (to be) delayed. In a corner of the restaurant a man and a woman (to wait), drinking coffee. The man (to smile) absently. He (to try) to come to the airport alone. He (not to like) the prolonged ceremonies of leave -taking. But his wife (to insist) upon driving him out.

VII. When I (to arrive) at the college hall, I (to see) John in the crowd and (to go) over to him.

«Hallo, John,» I said. «What you (to do) here?»
«Oh, I (to be) a student here.»
«You might have called on me.»
«I (to do), but you (to be) out,» said John, looking at me with very wide eyes.
«What you (to read)?»
«Modern languages,» he said with a grin.
He suddenly (to break) off and (to move) away.
Then the man who (to watch) us talk (to smile) at me and (to ask): «You (to know) John?»
«Yes. We (to be) at school together.»

VIII. Lloyd Barber (to lie) on his bed reading the newspaper when the telephone (to ring).

It (to be) only two o'clock in the afternoon, but it (to rain) hard and he (to have) no place to go anyway. He (to read) about the relative standing of the football teams. He (to have) no interest in them but he (to finish) everything else in the paper.

He (to pick) up the phone, and the man at the desk downstairs (to say): «There is a lady waiting for you here, Mr.. Barber.»

«She (to give) her name?» he asked.

«No. Shall I ask it?»

«Never mind,» Barber said. «I'll be right down.»

He (to hang) up the phone, (to put) on his shoes, (to button) his collar and (to pull) his tie into place. Then he (to get) into his jacket and (to pat) his pockets to see if he (to have) cigarettes. He (to have) no cigarettes. He (to shrug) and (to go) downstairs.

Maureen (to sit) in the lobby. She (to be) a pretty girl with bright credulous eyes when Barber first (to meet) her. But she (to have) two children since then, and now she (to wear) a worn coat, and her complexion (to go) and her eyes (to be) pale.

IX. He (to be) too tired to sleep. He (to lie) on his back limply. It (to seem) that all the strength (to go) out of his limbs, and presently I (to see) that he (to fall) asleep. It (to be) the first natural sleep he (to have) for a week. I (to cover) him and (to turn) down the light. In the morning when I (to awake) he (to be) still asleep. He (not to move). His gold -rimmed spectacles (to be) still on his nose.

Ex. 55. Revision: use the required Present or Past tense -aspect forms in the following text:

When the train (to get) in, half an hour late, it (to be) nearly midnight. All the way up the valley the engine (to battle) against a high wind. The station (to be) deserted. Andrew (to start) along Station Road. Full of his success he (to want) to reach his wife fast enough to tell her joyously everything that (to take) place.

As he (to turn) into the main street he (to see) a man running. It (to be) Frank Davis. He said: «I (to come) for you, Doctor. The wind (to knock) the wires all to smash.»

«What (to be) wrong?»

«There (to be) a fall -down at Number Three. A lad (to get) buried there, almost.»

«I've got to have my bag,» Andrew said to Davis. «You go up to my house and fetch it for me. Tell my wife where I (to go).»

Andrew (to be) at Number Three in four minutes. There he (to find) three men waiting for him. They (to go) to the shaft. As they (to enter) the cage another figure (to come) across the yard. It (to be) Davis with the bag.

«You (to be) quick,» Andrew said, as Davis (to enter) the cage. There (to be) a clang and the cage (to drop) to the bottom.

Andrew (to be) underground before. Number Three (to be) an old mine with very low passages through which they (to crawl) for nearly -half a mile. Then they (to see) a light and three men who (to do) their best to revive another man.

Andrew (to reach) forward. By the light of the lamp he (to run) his hands over the injured man. The whole of the man's body (to be) free except his left forearm, which (to lie) beneath the fall, so pressed by the weight of the rock that it (to hold) him immovably a prisoner.

Andrew (to see) instantly that the only way to free the man (to be) to amputate his forearm and (to ask) for his bag.

Andrew (to open) the bag and (to smell) chloroform. Before he (to thrust) his hand into the bag, he (to know) what (to occur). Frank Davis, in his haste to reach the mine, (to drop) the bag. The chloroform bottle (to be) broken, its contents spilled. He (to have) no time to send up to the surface because the roof (to be) rotten and it (may) crash upon them all.

For perhaps thirty seconds he (to remain) paralyzed. Then he again (to bend) over the man and (to say): «Shut your eyes, Sam.»

The light (to be) dim. At the first incision Sam (to groan) between his teeth. Then, mercifully, when the knife (to grate) upon the bone, he (to faint). Andrew (can) not see what he (to do). He (to believe) that nobody ever (to think) of performing an operation under such conditions. He (to feel) suffocated here, in this rat -hole, deep down beneath the surface of the ground, lying in the mud.

When he (to finish) at last, he (to sob) with relief. «Take Sam out,» he said stumbling to his knees. The men (to put) Sam on the stretcher and (to begin) moving slowly. They (not to go) sixty paces when they (to hear) an echo of a new fall -down behind them.

Ex. 56. Revision: use the required Present or Past tense -aspect forms in the following text:

After Meg (to present) the pot of jelly to her uncle she (to sit) down by the open fire and (to prepare) to tell her news. But first she (to remark): «It (to seem) strange not to see three or four dogs stretched on the hearth, as there used to be.»

«Yes,» her uncle (to agree), «it does. But since the old terrier (to die), Alayne (to be) able to keep them more or less under control. The bulldog (to take) up with the groom and (to spend) most of his time in the stables. The sheepdog (to have) a fancy for the kitchen. It's a good thing, too, because the amount of mud he (to carry) in on his long coat is extraordinary. He actually (to ruin) the rugs. I (to think) Alayne (to be) quite right to keep them out.»

«I (to miss) them,» Meg said. «And so I'm sure will Renny when he (to come) home from the war.» She (to draw) a deep breath and (to continue): «He will find other changes too. For one thing, he will not find me in my house.»

Her uncle (to stare) at her speechless.

«I (to sell) it,» she said dramatically. «To a Mr. Clapperton.»

«Sold it,» her uncle (to repeat).

«Yes. You know I (to talk) of selling it ever since my husband (to die) Three days ago an agent (to bring) this Mr. Clapperton to see me. He (to be) a widower, a retired man. His wife (to hate) the country but he (to love) it. He (to want) to settle down and to live a quiet country life. He just (to want) something he never (to have). He (to have) plenty of money.»

At that moment Alayne (to come) into the room. She (to be) aware that Meg (to be) with her uncle and (to give) them time to talk. Now she (to be) told of the sale of the house. She (to congratulate) Meg. She (to think) Meg (to do) well for herself. The talk (to circle) round and round Mr. Clapperton and Meg's plans for the future. She barely (to go) when Wright, the servant, (to enter).

«Excuse me, madam,» he said, «but I have to tell you that the oil heater (to go) off. I can't do anything with it. Shall I telephone for the repair man to come out?»

«That oil heater,» said the uncle, «(to be) a pest. I sometimes wish you had never had - it installed, Alayne.»

«You must admit,» she returned, «that the house (to have) a more even temperature since then. You (to say) repeatedly how comfortable it (to make) every room.»

«I know, I know,» the uncle said testily. He (not to like) to be reminded of what he (to say) on another occasion. «But it always (to get) out of order.»

Alayne (to rise) abruptly. «I must go to the children,» she said.

«Speaking of the children, mam,» said Wright. «I (to have) a note here from Archer's teacher. I (to meet) her on the road and she (to hand) it to me.»

«Why you (not to give) it to me before?» asked Alayne. She (to give) him an icy look as she (to take) the note. She (to read):

«Dear Mrs. Whiteoak,

I do dislike to complain of dear little Archer, but he (to be) very late for school every morning this week and yesterday he (not to appear) till afternoon. This is very bad for his work which, as you know, is uneven ...»

«Is anything wrong?» the uncle asked.

«No, not exactly.»

Wright (to listen). To him Alayne (to say): «You may telephone for the repair man.»

When he (to leave) the room she (to exclaim) almost tragically: «It's about Archer. He (to play) truant again. Really, I (not to know) what to do about him.»

At that moment the door (to open) and a boy of eight years (to come) into the room. He (to look) at his elders with an air of profound pessimism.

«Now then, sir,» the uncle said, «what about these complaints of you?

We (to know) what you (to be) up to.»

«I (not to like) going to school,» said Archer. «It (to make) me tired.»

His mother (to look) at him anxiously. «Archer, when you (to say) school (to make) you tired, you (to mean) it (to make) you tired in a slangy sense or you (to mean) it (to tire) you?»

Archer (to consider) this and then (to reply): «The teacher (to make) me tired and the lessons (to tire) me.»

«Good man!» the uncle exclaimed. «You (to explain) it perfectly.»

Ex. 57. Revision: use the required Present or Past tense -aspect forms in the following text:

There (to be) a loud crash upstairs, followed by a prolonged wailing sound.

Mary (to toss) the book which she (to read), on the table and (to run) up the stairs two at a time.

The scene (to be) much as she (to expect). Theo (to sit) up in bed looking rather sheepish, holding the dog in his arms. The maid (to cry), and (to try) to extract a handkerchief from her apron. Theo's tea tray (to lie) upon the floor with a mess, partly on it and partly round about it, of broken crockery, scattered bread and butter, and shattered cake. The carpet (not to suffer), since the floor in Theo's room (to be) always thickly covered with old newspapers, and into this litter the spilt tea already (to be) absorbed.

«Oh, Casie, do stop it,» said Mary to the maid. «Go downstairs and put the kettle on again. I'll clear this up.» Casie (to go) away still weeping. «What (to happen)?» said Mary.

«Casie (to say) she (to be) old and useless now and I (to agree) with her, and then she (to throw) the tea tray on the floor.»

«Theo, you mustn't bait Casie like that, you always (to do) it, it (to be) so unkind.»

The dog (to jump) down and (to investigate) the wreckage on the floor. His wet pink nose (to quiver) as he (to shoot) out a delicate pink lip and very daintily (to pick) up a thin slice of bread and butter.

«Don't let the dog get at the cake, please. Would you mind putting it on to this?» Theo (to say) and (to hold) out a sheet of newspaper. Mary (to pick) up the larger fragments of the cake and (to put) them on the newspaper. Then she (to begin) to collect the debris on to the tray.

The dog (to be) now on the bed again, his tail, on which he (to sit), vibrating with frustrated wags. Theo (to beam) too. Looking at them sternly, it (to occur) to Mary that the dog (to come) to resemble Theo, or perhaps it (to be) the other way round.

Ex. 58. Revision: use the required Present or Past tense -aspect forms in the following text:

It was four years ago that Maurice (to leave) his native land and now he (to be) again within its borders. Then he (to sail) by passenger ship from Halifax to Cobh. He (to return) by plane and warship by way of Portugal and New York. He (to smile) as he (to consider) the change made in him by those four years in Ireland. He (to be) now a different being, he thought, from the child of thirteen who (to go) to live with old Dermot. How timid he (to be) then! The very marrow of him (to shudder) as he (to stand) waiting in the hall while old Dermot (to interview) Wright in whose charge Maurice (to be). When Wright (to come) out of the room he (to wink) at Maurice and (to whisper): «I (to hope) you'll like the old man better than I do.»

Maurice slowly (to enter) the room where Dermot (to wait). The man (to look) very old, but his voice (to be) strong and his handclasp warm. Maurice clearly (to remember) the first words they (to exchange).

«How do you do?» Dermot (to say). «I hear you (to be) seasick coming across.»

«A little. After that it (to be) fine.»

Then Dermot (to ask): «You (to think) you can bear to visit me for a while?»

«Yes. I'm sure I can.» His own voice (to sound) very small even to himself.
 «Remember,» Dermot (to continue), «if you (not to like) me you may go home whenever you (to choose).»
 «Mummie (to tell) me so.»
 Maurice (to be) terribly homesick on that first night in Ireland, but the next day (to be) warm and sunny. Dermot (to show) him the garden and the pastures where the horses (to graze). Later, by himself, Maurice (to cross) the green fields and (to climb) the hill from where he (to have) a glimpse of the sea.
 At the end of his first summer in Ireland the war (to come). It now (to go) on for four years. In spite of all the letters from home Maurice (to feel) remote from the war. Even when his father and his uncles (to go) overseas to fight, even when he (to hear) that his father (to be) a prisoner in Germany, he (to feel) remote from the war, leading his peaceful life with his tutor and the old man.
 Now Dermot (to be) dead and young Maurice (to be) on his way home. Again he (to think) of the change in himself. He (to go) over to Ireland in the charge of Wright, doing just what Wright (to tell) him to do; he (to come) back by himself, doing just as he (to please). He (to leave) home wearing the clothes of a small boy. He (to return) in the clothes of a man. He (to try) to feel the unconcern of the seasoned traveler, a man who (to be) abroad and (to know) all about life. But, as the train (to near) the city, a tremor (to run) through him and his mouth (to become) dry. Who would be at the station to meet him? Not his father, for his father (to be) still a prisoner in Germany. Perhaps his mother would come! At the thought of her his heart (to give) a quick thud. Her figure (to rise) before him, as he (to see) her at the moment of their parting more than four years ago. Her arms (to be) held close against her body, but her eyes (to cling) to him in anguish. She (to fear) she (may) never see him again. Now he (to have) a sharp stab of jealousy as he (to think) how his brothers (to be) close beside her all these years, and he far away. He (to be) almost a stranger.

Ex. 59. State the kind of action the Future Indefinite, the Future Continuous and the Future Perfect are used to express in the following sentences:

1. Come back tomorrow. I'll explain it all then.
2. She'll stay with us as long as her family can do without her.
3. «The evenings will be getting long soon,» I said to my aunt, to cheer her up.
4. It is not wise for you to go back home. You'll meet a nice boy here, you'll settle down, get a nice flat and you'll get everything you want and deserve.
5. If you come back in about twenty minutes Alec and I will have had our talk.
6. He'll talk only of his father.
7. I'll remember that.
8. You'd better ring me back in half an hour. By then I'll have found the letter.
9. «I do wish you'd do something about these stones,» said Mary. «We shall all be falling over them.»
10. In the meantime, I shall be careful what I eat.
11. «You will talk to Paula, won't you?» «Yes. I'll do it straight away.»
12. He's very much ashamed. He realizes that it's all over between them. I think he'll be leaving quite soon.
13. The trial will last a few weeks.
14. Let's go for a walk. We'll go up through the woods and I'll show you where the spring comes out to the ground.
15. They'll miss her a lot, I know.

Ex. 60. Use the required Future tense -aspect forms in the following sentences:

1. How terribly nice of you to come! I just (to wash) off and (to get) my coat on, and then I (to show) you round. 2. I (to clean) up when you come with my things. 3. He says they (to finish) the house by the end of next month. 4. Meg cast herself on her father's knee and threw her arms about his neck. «Your father's tea (to get) cold, Meg,» said her mother. 5. He probably (to get) here in about three weeks. By which time I (to return) to the University. 6. «I don't have a job.» «Don't be scared. We (to find) something.» 7. In that case we (to take) a taxi. 8. You can't live that far from the office. In a little while you (to look) for a place back here. 9. Your father (to be) disappointed. 10. He never (to make) much money. 11. He (to eat) an orange every day. 12. He (to practice) the violin all the afternoon. 13. All of Bennet's men (to wait) when the union organizers show up. 14. The judge (to ask) you a few questions.

Ex. 61. Say whether the use of the Future Indefinite in the following sentences is free or conditioned or modally colored:

1. I'll come round tomorrow night. 2. His father won't hear of his giving up the job. 3. Suddenly sorry, she said: «Some day, perhaps, I shall come to life again.» 4. John is not here. He'll be back soon though. 5. I'll drop you a note when I've seen Paula. 6. Do sit down, Edmund. You'll break something if you go on moving around. 7. I don't know what I'll do when I leave here. I'll probably never get another job. 8. Will you forgive me for saying something, Mr. March? 9. Shall I turn on the bath for you? 10. It'll be easier when you get away. We won't see one another every day. 11. Oh, don't bother a*bout me. I'll stroll down and look at the town. 12. He's got a lovely voice. He'll go a long way. You'll see. 13. «The sun will dry me quickly enough,» he said leaving the towel on the edge of the pool. 14. They will do whatever they have to do to regain their self-respect. 15. They'll wonder where I am. 16. Andy is overtired, and unless he rests he will have a breakdown. 17. It won't do Tony any real harm to wait. 18. «I'll only go to oblige you,» said Kate. 19. Most people will assume that I intend to drift around and become completely idle. 20. I shall go through with it. I won't let Renny down. 21. A boat will be sent to fetch them at the pier. 22. Won't you sit down? 23. If you'll take my advice you'll go home. 24. I am forced to discharge you from the Service. The necessary papers will reach you in due course. Meanwhile you will return to your post. 25. Now go to bed, or you'll be ill. 26. The dining-room will be painted next. 27. I think he'll speak to us about it. 28. You shall have it back tomorrow. 29. This barn will be pulled down soon. 30. He'll certainly find it out for you.

Ex. 62. Compare, in the following sentences, the different grammatical means of denoting future actions and state the specific meaning each of these means adds to the idea of futurity:

1. «We're going to have more rain.» «Yes. Bob will be glad he's got his hay in.» 2. I'm having some people in after dinner tonight at my place. Will you come? 3. «When is Rosemary coming?» «Some time later this evening, Philip said. And he's coming, too. We're going to have a jolly family evening.» «You'll have to look after her till I get back.» 4. At least I'll see that they don't do anything outrageous to her. 5. He heard a young female voice cry harshly and distinctly: «I'm going to have one more cake. I will have one more.» 6. Now everything is prepared. We only want the taxi. But it is

not to be here till 10 o'clock. 7. What time do we arrive? 8. Well, I'll be seeing you this evening. 9. «How long are you going to stay with us? 10. He says he'll do whatever I wish. 11. I don't know when I shall be in the mood for entertainment. 12. There is a train that leaves Waverly at ten o'clock tomorrow morning. 13. I'll probably come back and -sleep here. 14. «What's your brother like? I shall be knowing him at Oxford,» said Val. 15. What do I say to him? 16. A new car will cost you a lot of money. 17. If we don't get there before seven o'clock they will have had dinner. 18. Are you staying at home tonight? 19. You are to stay here till I come back. 20. Now that your assistant's gone you will be looking for someone to do his job.

Ex. 63. Choose the best suited means of denoting future actions for the following sentences:

1. I (to write) to Jack tonight and (to make) sure that he (to meet) you and (to look) after you. 2. I have the feeling that something will (to happen), and it depresses me. 3. «Can I help you, Mary? You (to wash) up?» «No. Casie (to do) it. I (to take) some strawberries up to Uncle Willy.» «May I come, too? I just (to go) as far as the cottage.» 4. Well, I (to speak) to Aubrey. I (to see) him at lunch. 5. Do you think there (to be) a war? 6. I suppose I (to stay) here a little longer. 7. Sooner or later you (to get) over it. 8. I never (to forget) that night. 9. We soon (to see) who is right. 10. Whatever damage they (to do) they (to pay) for it. 11. «Ann,» said her mother, «here is news that (to surprise) you. Phil has come from abroad. He (to come) to see us tomorrow.» 12. If you (not to go) I (to fetch) my husband. 13. It (to be) a real pleasure for me to see them back. 14. Roy is on his way. He probably (to get) here in about three hours. 15. Do put something on, Tony. You (to catch) cold. 16. We (to have) coffee after dinner as usual. 17. You should go and say good -bye to your mother. The train (to leave) in twenty minutes. 18. No, I don't think you can see her. And she (to do) her homework after supper. 19. A soft voice said: «Are you locked out? Don't worry. I (to let) you in.» 20. «Now I feel much stronger. And the doctor says I (to leave) the hospital soon.» 21. I (to tell) you the whole story one of these days. 22. I'm sure you (not to like) the play. 23. He certainly (to expect) you to come. 24. Tell me all about it. I (not to mention) it to anybody. 25. You must keep away from the road until it (to be) dark. The peasants (to go) to market soon. 26. It is September already. The leaves (to fall) soon. 27. The sun (to set) by the time we (to get) home. 28. This book (to tell) you all about it. 29. When we (to get) back he (to have) a bath and we (to find) him asleep in his bed. 30. She was still sitting in the chair in which he had left her. «Hello, why haven't you dressed for dinner?» He looked about the room. «You haven't even unpacked.» «I (not to unpack). I (not to stay) here. I (to leave) you.»

Ex. 64. Revision: use the required Present, Past or Future tense -aspect forms in the following texts:

I. When the old man (to finish) his meal, he (to feel) inclined to discuss their Irish relative with his grandson.

«I (to like) the man,» he said. «He (to appear) to be a very agreeable fellow, but I can't somehow picture him on our farm. Can you, John?»

«Not for the life of me,» said John. «I can't imagine what Father (to do) with him. He (to be) no use to anyone.»

«But you always (to complain) that you (to have) too much to do,» the old man retorted.

«What we (to need),» said John, «(to be) another good farm hand, not a gentleman farmer to share the profits.»

«I understand from your mother that he (to do) anything.»

«You may understand it from her, but he (to say) so?»

«My god!» exclaimed the old man, «(the man barely (to arrive)!)»

II. Meanwhile it (to get) on to the time for the family's usual fortnight at the seaside. They always (to go) to Herne Bay and for years they (to take) the same lodgings. One evening Herbert (to say) to his mother as casually as he could: «By the way, Mum, you'd better write and tell them I (not to want) my room this year. Betty and I (to get) married and we (to go) to Scotland for the honeymoon.»

His mother (not to say) a word. She (to go) deathly pale.

«Oh, Mum, don't take it so hard. I'm sure you (to like) Betty when you (to get) to know her. Everything (to be) all right if you only (to be) reasonable.»

«That's what you think. Well, let me tell you that this woman never (to set) foot in this house, only over my dead body.»

Ex. 65. Revision: use the required Present, Past or Future tense -aspect forms in the following text:

«What I (to have) to do to earn so much money?» Barber asked.

«You (to have) to do a little flying,» Smith chuckled.

«Go on,» said Barber.

«A friend of mine just (to buy) a single -engine plane. He (to need) a private pilot. My friend (to be) a wealthy man who (to like) to travel, especially to France. He (to go) there at every opportunity.»

«Yes?»

«With you he would like to make two trips from Egypt to the South of France within next month. Then, on the third trip he (to find) that he (to be) in a hurry and he (to take) the commercial plane and his pilot (to follow) two days later, alone.»

«Alone?» Barber asked.

«Alone,» Smith said, «with a small box.»

«And what there (to be) in the small box?»

«It (to be) absolutely necessary to know?»

«What I (to tell) the customs people when they (to ask) me what (to be) in the box,» Barber said.

«You (to have) nothing to do with the customs people,» Smith said. «When you (to take) off from the airport in Cairo, the box (not to be) on board. And when you (to land) at the airport at Cannes, the box (not to be) on board. This is how it (to be) done. You (to establish) a pattern. You (to be) in and out of Cairo airport several times. They (to know) you. You (to become) a part of the routine of the field. Then on the trip you (to take) alone, everything (to be) perfectly legitimate. .You (to have) only a small bag with your personal effects. Your flight plan (to show) that your destination (to be) Cannes and that you (to come) down at Malta and Rome for refueling only. You (to take) off from Cairo. You (to go) off course by only a few miles. Some distance from

the coast, you (to be) over the desert. You (to come) down on an old RAF landing strip that (not to be) used since 1943. There (to be) several men there. They (to put) the box on board. The whole thing (not to take) more than two minutes. At Malta, nobody (to ask) you anything, because you (to be) in transit and you (not to leave) the plane and you (to stay) only long enough to refuel. The same thing at Rome. You (to arrive) over the South coast of France in the evening, before the moon (to be) up. Once more, Smith continued, you (to be) just a little off course. You (to fly) low over the hills between Cannes and Grasse. At a certain point, you (to see) an arrangement of lights. You (to throttle) down, (to open) the door, and (to push) the box out, from a height of a hundred feet. Then you (to close) the door and (to turn) towards the sea and (to land) at Cannes airport. Your papers (to be) perfectly in order. You (to have) nothing to declare. You (to walk) away from the plane once and for all and we (to pay) you the money I (to speak) of. Isn't it lovely?» «No. It isn't lovely at all.»

Ex. 66. Revision: use the required Present, Past or Future tense -aspect forms in the following text:

«Let's go and see what the workmen (to do) at our new house,» said Dorothy. Dorothy's mother (to plan) for several months to build a house on a plot of land on the same street that they (to live) on now, but farther down. The contractor (to be) at work only a few days.

«He just (to finish) staking off the ground when I (to be) there the other afternoon,» said Ethel.

«He (to be) way ahead of that now,» Dorothy (to report) as they (to walk) on. «I (to be) sure that the workmen (to dig) the whole cellar by this afternoon and they (to begin) to put in the concrete wall.»

As they (to approach) the place which they (to call) «our house lot» for several months, they (to see) that the gravel for the concrete (to be) hauled to the top of the hill where the bags of sand and cement already (to be) unloaded and a small concrete mixer set up.

«They (to do) things fast, () they?» exclaimed Dorothy.

Mr. Anderson, the contractor, (to bow) to them as they (to reach) the top of the hill.

«You (to come) to superintend us, Miss Dorothy?» he asked pleasantly. «We (to make) all our preparations for mixing the concrete today, and then we (to start) up the machine tomorrow. It (not to take) us long to do this small cellar,» Mr. Anderson (to say) and (to walk) away to attend to the placing of the pile of gravel.

«If your driveway (not to wind) around more than this road, all your friends' horses (to puff) like mills when they (to reach) the top,» Ethel warned her cousin.

«The driveway,» said Dorothy, «(to sweep) around the foot of the hill and (to come) gently up the side.»

«That (to be) a long walk for people on foot.»

«There (to be) a footpath over there,» Dorothy (to indicate) a side of the hill away from the proposed driveway. «It (to be) a short cut and it (to be) walled in with shrubs so it (not to be) seen from the driveway.»

The girls now (to come) to the excavation for the cellar and (to watch) the workmen throwing out the last shovelfuls of earth.

«They (to make) a fence all around the cellar, you see,» Dorothy said, «it (to keep) the

concrete in place when it (to be) poured in, and (to give) it shape.»

«I think the cellar (to look) ugly with that plank wall,» declared Ethel seriously.

«The planks (to be) taken away.»

«The concrete (not to show) lines where the cracks between the boards (to be)?»

«You (to see) those rolls of heavy paper over there? The planks (to be) lined with that so that the concrete (to come) against a perfectly smooth surface.»

«Oh, it (to be) all right then,» said Ethel, who (to be) afraid that she (to hurt) Dorothy's feelings.

Ex. 67. Compare, in the following sentences, the different grammatical means of denoting future actions viewed from the past and state the specific meaning each of these means adds to the idea of futurity:

1. Her parents were out playing bridge, and would not return for another hour. 2. She told me last night that she was going for a swim if she woke early. 3. He said he was going to live in France. 4. He had made all his plans. He was going to buy a house and he would keep a motor -car. 5. I told him that when his wife came they were to follow the path till they found us. 6. She felt certain that if she refused he would make some scene. 7. He learned that Mrs. Carter had been on the ship since she left Yokohama and she would be spending Christmas at sea. 8. Then I told my father that I wasn't going into his goddamn business. 9. She held out her hands in entreaty and I saw that she was going to cry. 10. She talked a little about the old days and asked if I would come to the party. 11. He said that the head would now have to sack Canning, and they'd be losing a good man. 12. He made sure that the child was provided for. 13. In a few weeks he was to marry Meg. 14. They had heard that he would never be quite well again.

Ex. 68. Choose for the following sentences the best suited means of denoting future actions viewed from the past:

1. He asked him if he (to stay) for supper and (to meet) the staff. 2. We all knew that Basil (to have) to cut his hair when he (to go) into the army. 3. Rehearsals at the theatre (to begin) at the end of March. The season (to open) in May. 4. She had heard they (to send) somebody from Sidney to inspect their work. 5. Your mother thought that you (to want) a place of your own when you (to come) out of the army. 6. Renny started out early the next day. He knew it (to be) hot. 7. Marge informed her landlady that she soon (to leave). 8. Then one day he suddenly asked me if I (to marry) him. 9. The grand wedding ball (to begin) at eight o'clock that evening. 10. I did not know what (to become) of me. 11. Did you think you (to be) believed? 12. He saw to it that she (to get) everything she needed. 13. I hoped he (to find) some fun where he (to go) for his holiday. 14. Peter (to dine) with the Duncans on Sunday. But in the morning he called up and asked if he might be excused because his father (to come) down and they (to have) a family party. 15. He took care that his luggage (to be) sent directly to the hotel.

Ex. 69. Revision: use the required Present, Past, Future or Future -in -the -Past tense -aspect forms in the following text:

George Moon (to sit) in his office. His work (to be) finished, and he (to linger) there because he (not to have) the heart to go down to the club. It (to get) on towards dinner

time, and there (to be) a good many fellows hanging about the bar. Two or three of them (to offer) him a drink. He (can) not face their heartiness. He (to know) some of them for thirty years. They (to bore) him, and on the whole he (to dislike) them, but now that he (to see) them for the last time it (to give) him a pang. Tonight they (to give) him a farewell dinner. Everyone (to be) there and they (to present) him with a silver tea -service that he (not to want) in the least. They (to make) speeches in which they (to refer) to his work in the colony, (to express) their regret at his departure and (to wish) him long life to enjoy his well-earned leisure. He (to reply) suitably. He (to prepare) a speech in which he (to survey) the change that (to take) place in the colony since he (to land) at Singapore. He (to thank) them for their loyal co -operation with him during the term he (to be) in the service. They (to sing) «For he's a jolly good fellow». Then they (to dance) and a good many of the younger men (to get) drunk. Tomorrow a large crowd (to see) him off at the station and that (to be) the end of him. He (to wonder) what they (to say) of him. His subordinates (to fear) him. He never (to spare) himself and (to see) no reason why he should spare others. George Moon (to sigh) a little. From an official standpoint his career (to be) a success; but from the human one it perhaps (to be) otherwise. He (to earn) respect, but he (to be) too clever to think for a moment that he (to inspire) affection. No one (to regret) him. In a few months he (to be) forgotten.

Ex. 70. Revision: use the required Present, Past, Future or Future -in -the -Past tense -aspect forms in the following text:

He (to walk) slowly towards the Etoile. It (to be) a raw night and a fog (to move) in from the river, and the streets (to be) almost empty, because everybody (to be) inside eating dinner. He (not to look) at any of the lighted windows, because he (not to buy) anything for a long time. He (to pass) several movie houses. That (to set) him thinking about a scenario he (may) write to earn some money. In it his hero (to have) to fly to Africa to bring back a secret load. He nearly (to be) caught several times there, and he (to fight) his way out of a trap on the desert, killing several dark men just when they (to set) fire to the shed he (to hide) in. And there (to be) some engine trouble over the Mediterranean on his way back. And he just (to pull) out, with the water lapping at the wing tips, and he undoubtedly (to crash), without doing too much damage to himself, probably just a photogenic cut on the forehead. And he (to turn) out to be a member of the British Intelligence and he never (to doubt) his luck and his nerve never (to fail) him. Or, if it was an artistic picture, there (to be) a heavy ground mist on the hills and the plane (to drone) on and on, desperate and lost, and then, finally, with the fuel tanks empty, the hero (to crash) in flames. Battered and staggering, as he was, he (to try) to get the secret load out, but he (not to be) able to move it, and finally the flames (to drive) him back and he (to stand) against a tree, laughing crazily, his face black with smoke, watching the plane and the load burn, to show the vanity of human aspiration.

Ex. 71. Say whether the action of the object clause precedes, follows or is simultaneous with the action of the principal clause in the following sentences:

1. He asked me what work I was doing and whether I intended to go to a University. 2. Has she been telling you why she wants to chuck her job? 3. I'm afraid I'll be doing the washing tomorrow. 4. She claimed that she had met Monty on her way home.

Monty had told her that I would probably come to his place later. 5. Then I thought about Mother. She would certainly ask me where I had been all day. 6. I don't believe anyone has troubled to think about that. 7. She said she would be staying in town next day to do some shopping. 8. It's not true she is my friend. 9. I'll tell you what he's doing. 10. He had told me he had been on the island for fifteen years. 11. I will say that we have agreed to provide for the child. 12. I don't think that I shall ever work for your father. 13. Out of the corner of my eye I saw the youths had stopped talking and were watching us. 14. I hope you know what you're doing. 15. I'll let you know what the situation is. 16. I don't know whether he was a fool or a wise man. 17. I'll tell Marcel that you'll take over the actual direction immediately. 18. In the hotel the waiter told me that an American had been staying there for three months. 19. It is strange that he didn't speak to you. 20. It was also rumored that Dan had got married.

Ex. 72. Make the actions in the following object clauses simultaneous with those of their principal clauses:

1. I was surprised you (to know) my name. 2. She cannot imagine what he (to do) there. 3. I've forgotten what he (to look) like. 4. I did not know whether the doctor (to mean) what he (to say) or whether he (to have) a joke at my expense. 5. They'll say you (not to make) proper use of your information. 6. When he had a chance he would certainly ask her if she (to do) her bit to make the party a success. 7. «Hallo, Jack,» Mrs. Holt smiled at him. «My husband has been telling me how much he (to like) you.» 8. Quite soon he'll be asking if all the doors (to be) locked for the night. 9. He had told his father that now he (to make) ten dollars a week less. 10. The last two weeks she had been saying to everyone who phoned her that she (to be) unwell and (not to leave) home. 11. It was strange to me that her world (to seem) to contain no conflict. 12. When I knew him better he admitted that he (to feel) lonely in London. 13. «I had hoped to take a dip before breakfast,» Mrs. Smith said, «but I found Joseph (to clean) the pool.» 14. It was a pity I no longer (to care) in the least about Pat. 15. David, Nellie has been telling me she (not to get) anywhere in her present job.

Ex. 73. Make the actions in the following object clauses precede those of their principal clauses:

1. David said that he (to ask) permission from the director for me to watch the dress rehearsal. 2. I knew that for the past twenty-five years he (to buy) the same paper each morning. 3. Indeed it was whispered that the headmaster (to receive) a telegram from the boy's father. 4. You'll see what I (to write) about you. 5. But he was uneasy. His wife would easily find out why he (to go) to Saigon. 6. It is not known where he (to spend) his early childhood. 7. I don't know what (to go) wrong between them. 8. Then he admitted that he (to live) since the summer in his father's house. 9. Of course he'll wonder why you (to cry). 10. It's a pity you (to miss) that concert. 11. Her mother had once confided to her that she (to want) to be an actress. 12. It was probably true that he (to be) quite fond of his late brother. 13. One day I'll tell you why I never (to marry). 14. I wonder what she (to do) there so late at night. 15. «I'm glad you (to come) early,» she said again.

Ex. 74. Make the actions in the following object clauses follow those of their principal clauses:

1. He decided that he (to go) to Berlin as soon as possible. 2. He had written to her that he (to come) home. 3. I sent them a telegram this morning to say I (to go) to England and that I (to write). 4. I'll ask him what he (to have) for lunch. 5. They wondered if he (to come) back. 6. I'm sorry. I'd quite forgotten you (to stay) here. 7. Before leaving the house in the morning, she had told her mother she (to work) in the hospital that afternoon. 8. I won't mention where he (to be) sent. 9. It is improbable that they (to make) any considerable progress in so short a time. 10. I think you (to stay) in town for a night at least.

Ex. 75. Find in the following sentences the head -words which the object clauses are subordinated to:

1. She seemed to have forgotten what had been happening a few minutes before. 2. Freddy felt relieved that there was no one in the house. 3. I pretended to be reading, afraid that he would come and look at my face. 4. After he told his story he stared at me, as if to see whether it had been worth telling. 5. At home I found a note asking me if I would lunch with my aunt. 6. He was suddenly conscious that the little lady across the aisle was staring intently at him. 7. Peter had telephoned from the office to say that Simon had agreed to taking a holiday. 8. She talked about herself quite frankly, admitting that there had been a quarrel between her and her husband.

Ex. 76. Identify the kinds of subordinate clauses in which the rules of the sequence of tenses are strictly observed:

1. What surprised me was that Pat was so much at home here. 2. Arthur is working his guts out so that he can get a good job and keep his family. 3. He grimaced at the thought of what the suitcase had cost him. 4. We had better withdraw our opposition, Mr.. Carter thought. The young people had promised not to marry until Grace had taken her degree. That would give them a year, and by then, he hoped, she would have changed her mind. 5. All this led to the promise that she would entrust her future security to me. 6. The odd thing about him is that he is so shy. 7. Tom looked at his French teacher. She was particularly attractive today, he thought. 8. He invited me to lunch with him at the club, so that we could go together to his office afterwards. 9. He had gone to the manager to protest, Mr.. Holt said, but the manager had said he was sorry, there was nothing he could do about it. 10. Whoever told you that was lying.

Ex. 77. Explain how the rules of the sequence of tenses work in clauses of the second, third, etc. degree of subordination:

1. She thought that her sister would detest the idea that their husbands had met to decide what they were going to do about the farm. 2. Henry's father came down to the school field to tell Henry that they had just got a telegram from Washington announcing that Henry's brother had been killed in action in Germany. 3. I knew she was itching to tell me what had happened. 4. I felt that I at last knew her well enough to ask about what had been in my mind for the past week. 5. I wonder if you realize that your sister is going to be in London too. 6. He knew that his mother would think he was seriously ill and would probably speak to the teacher. 7. He wanted to return to

the house to see how Billy was doing and tell him that he had phoned to his mother and that he would be going out to California in two or three days. 8. She knew that he had been worried by the letter, too, and was now relieved to know that things were taking a turn for the better. 9. Rudy had decided that he would have to tell Denton that it was impossible for him to appear before the board the next day, but that he would offer to do so any other day.

Ex. 78. Give your reasons as to why the rules of the sequence of tenses are not observed in the following sentences:

1. I just wanted to thank you and tell you don't have to be there tomorrow at two p.m. 2. Yet was it not plain that he ought, whatever his motives for it might be, to break with Jessica and to see her no more? 3. He spoke with the satisfaction of a competent workman who knows his job from A to Z. 4. I practiced for only about a quarter of an hour, then watched the others shoot. I had forgotten how deafening a pistol can be. 5. His only passion was for the beauty of nature, and he sought felicity in the simple and natural things that life offers to everyone. 6. She began to consider how she should face her family. 7. Monty had told me that he had no permit for the gun, and that in England it is illegal to own a gun without a permit. 8. His room was getting cold, and I knew I should go; but we sat there because it is difficult to go without any particular reason for leaving. 9. «Eat your milk,» she said, «it is getting cold.» Billy folded his arms and leaned back. «I told you I don't like milk.» 10. «Did anybody telephone Father at the shop?» «I was out. But Mrs. Chapman said he took a call.» 11. I thought he'll go there tomorrow. 12. He knew that he must not tell Willy about his friend. 13. After a few trips to the stream I realized why fishing as a sport takes such a hold on such different types of people. 14. I felt like a man who wants to fall down and go to sleep, but is forced to keep on walking. 15. He made me realize that half the confusion of philosophers is not a failure to find the right answers, but a failure to ask the right questions.

Ex. 79. Use the required tense -aspect forms in the following sentences, observing the rules of the sequence of tenses:

1. He hastened back home in the hope that the guests (not to go) all yet. 2. Well, I don't think I ever (to see) you before. 3. She ended by saying that she (to think) she (to make) a mistake. 4. She knew what (to go) on in their minds. 5. She felt that her father (not to want) to disturb her. 6. She had telephoned her husband to the office to say that her brother (to return) from abroad. 7. An old friend rang up to ask if they (to have) a good time in Italy, how Elisabeth (to feel), and whether she (can) go with his wife to a concert on Sunday morning. 8. I could see that he (to be) glad that the talk (to turn) to a new subject. 9. It's odd that they both (to turn) up there about the same time. 10. She had not yet figured out what she (to do) and she (to hope) to be able to wait a little. 11. It was possible that Jack (to hang) around. 12. She knew that John (to work) very hard and (not to agree) certainly to taking a holiday at the moment. 13. She didn't know why she (to invent) suddenly the story. 14. He wondered if Sinclair (to have) to go to his father to get the money and (to have) to explain why he (to need) it.

Ex. 80. Translate the following into English, observing the rules of the sequence of tenses:

1. Я был уверен, что он уже жалеет, что написал ей. 2. Я подумал, что он устал, и спросил его, что он делал всё это время. 3. У меня было впечатление, что он находится там уже некоторое время. 4. Я кивнул и сказал «да», чувствуя, что это именно то, чего ей хочется. 5. Я передумал, поняв, что он ничего не сделает, чтобы помочь мне. 6. У меня было подозрение, что она забыла упомянуть, что я жду. 7. Он знал, о чем она думает. 8. Я не имею понятия, знает ли она, что Фил будет здесь. 9. Кстати, Тед знает, что моя сестра приезжает завтра? 10. Он еще не знал, что будет делать в Нью-Йорке.

Ex. 81. Revision: use the required tense -aspect forms in the following sentences:

1. As he (to think) for months about leaving his wife and (not to do) it because it (to be) too cruel to deprive her of himself, her departure (to be) a very healthful shock. 2. When she nearly (to reach) the end of the curve she (to see) a figure ahead of her. 3. Mary (to return) to the room. Al (to sit) down beside the gas fire and (to take) off his shoes. 4. Her eyes (to be) puffed, and she obviously (to cry) that afternoon. 5. No sooner I (to arrive) than I (to send) her a letter to say that I (to have) a present for her. 6. I (to get) back as soon as I (to get) through with my business. 7. His cheek (to be) cut. When she (to see) it she (to say): «Oh, you (to fight) again.» 8. He (to have) a son of twenty -seven. He (to farm) in New Zealand. 9. She (to make) me promise to say nothing about it till she (to have) a chance of breaking the news to her father gradually. 10. «How's the baby?» «Frightfully well, thank you, Aunt Em. He (to walk).» 11. As we (to drive), her eyes (to stare) rigidly out of the car window. 12. Before we (to walk) four hundred yards he (to take) his jacket off. 13. She (to become) aware that Tony (to come) back and considerately (to say) nothing. 14. Delany (to sit) up in bed and (to eat) his dinner when Jack (to come) into the room. His complexion (to be) ruddy. Obviously he (to be) shaved. He (to have) a glass of red wine with his meal. He (to wave) his fork as he (to see) Jack. 15. He (to remain) in his seat, as though studying his program, till the three (to pass) out into the foyer. 16. Darkness (to fall) when he finally (to return) to the hotel. He (to say) nothing to Pat except that he (to turn) down the job. He (cannot) give her any explanation until he completely (to understand) the meaning of what (to happen). 17. He (to take) to drink before they (to be) married three years. 18. A little break like this (to be) what she (to need) all these years. 19. She (to look) up at him from where she (to sit). Her make up things (to lie) in front of her. She (to do) her face. 20. While his wife (to read) the letter, he (to cross) to the window.

Ex. 82. Revision: use the required tense -aspect forms in the following sentences containing the adverb 'already':

1. She felt restless and started washing blouses that (to be) already spotlessly clean. 2. «Margot will be horrified when she hears about it.» «She already (to hear).» 3. Next day they already (to sit) at table when she came in to dinner. 4. It (to be) already dark, and there was a thin rain. 5. An hour later, when my father came home, Uncle Jack already (to teach) me the elements of geometry. 6. When I went into the office next morning I already (to formulate) my plan. 7. «He'll go to the place you work,» Jack

said. «He already (to be) there.» 8. Now if you will excuse me I'll go and change. I (to be) already late. 9. So I went into the living-room, where my aunt already (to wait) for me. 10. It was only a year after the wedding, but he already (to hate) his wife.

Ex. 83. Revision: use the required tense -aspect forms in the following sentences containing an indication of a period of time expressed by a 'for -phrase':

1. The war (to roll) along its course for two years when she began to grow apprehensive about her son's future. 2. The next week summer arrived. Basil did not ring. For days and days I (not to hear) of or from him. 3. Grant said to Barker: «I (to go) fishing in Scotland for a day or two.» 4. «How does it happen that you speak English so well?» «When I was a boy I had an English nanny. And I (to go) to school in England for two years, besides.» 5. «You were a marvelous boy in those days,» Maurice sighed. «And we (to do) wonderful things together for a few years.» 6. Soon the Pellews left the district, and I neither (to see) not (to hear) anything of them for nearly five years. 7. Everything considered, they (to live) together for nearly thirty years in what would certainly pass in those days as happiness. 8. I hope you (to leave) the child alone for half an hour. 9. He hung up and (to sit) looking at the telephone for a long time. 10. She then asked Dick, «You (to be) here for a long time?» «I'm to stay in Zurich till July.» 11. I (not to have) anything to eat for five days. 12. I (to play) the piano for five hours a day. 13. Angela took her glass of orange juice to the bathroom and drank it slowly in the bath. She (to lie) for a long time in the water, scarcely thinking. 14. At ten o'clock he awoke and remembered that he (not to see) Lily for three weeks. 15. That night when my mother said good night to me she (to hold) me for a long time in silence. 16. Such periods usually (to last) for about two or three weeks. 17. Rumor said that though they always were on good terms, the boys often (not to speak) to one another for days together. 18. But it does seem queer his getting caught by the machine he (to tend) for years. 19. When he came back into the living-room, he (to hold) the envelope in his hands for a long time before he tore it open. 20. The phone at the other end (to ring) a long time and he was just about to hang up when he heard Clare's voice in the earpiece.

Ex. 84. Revision: translate the following sentences into English concentrating on the use of tense -aspect forms:

1. Энн, Марта возвращается. - Я полагаю, что она остановится у своей сестры. 2. Она заперлась и не сойдет вниз, пока они не уйдут. 3. Я увидел, что момент, которого он ждал, наступил. 4. Он взял картофелину и осторожно положил ее обратно туда, где мы ее нашли. 5. Привет, Джек. Где ты был и что ты делал все это время? 6. Пока он ждал, он слышал, как внизу в саду играют дети. 7. Я знаю имена всех в деревне. Я живу здесь всю жизнь. 8. Она совсем не была робкой - она попросила меня называть ее Сэлли, когда мы еще не были знакомы и десяти минут. 9. Я не был тебе таким уж плохим мужем все эти двадцать лет, что мы женаты. 10. Спустя шесть месяцев я едва узнавал себя. 11. Я решил не поступать в Кэмбридж. В течение шести месяцев я почти не заглядывал ни в одну книгу по математике. 12. Мы позаботимся о том, чтобы ты с ним не встретился здесь. 13. Я не пробыл на борту и часа, как он пригласил меня на ленч. 14. Вас будут кормить три раза в день. 15. Рой много работал и плохо спал все это время, и вид

у него был очень усталый. 16. Я почти закончил книгу. 17. Ты даже не знаешь, что ты со мною сделал. 18. Я почти ни разу не поел как следует, с тех пор как я приехал в Англию. 19. Он не придет. Я только что разговаривала с ним по телефону. 20. Что ты собираешься делать в воскресенье? - Я еще не знаю. 21. Филипп отнес свой чемодан в вагон и курил на перроне. 22. Я видел твою сестру в театре. 23. Как, ты еще не готова! Что же ты делала? 24. В течение двух лет она была лучшей ученицей в классе. 25. В течение двух лет она является лучшей ученицей в классе. 26. Ты знаешь, в следующем семестре профессор Леннон будет читать курс по Ренессансу. 27. Жарко, и уже более месяца нет дождя. 28. Куда я положил свою зажигалку? 29. Я получил большое удовольствие от балета. Почему ты не пошел с нами? 30. Почему ты пришел так поздно?

Ex. 85. Revision: use the required tense -aspect forms in the following text:

On Saturday evening Herbert (to say) suddenly: «Mum, I (to ask) a young lady to come in to tea tomorrow. Is that all right?»

«And may I ask who she (to be) and how you (to get) to know her?»

«Her name (to be) Betty Bevan, and I (to meet) her first at the pictures one Saturday afternoon when it (to rain.) She (to sit) next to me and she (to drop) her bag and I (to pick) it up and we (to get) talking.»

«And when all this (to happen)?»

«About three months ago, and we (to go) to the pictures about twice a week ever since.»

«What she (to do)?»

«She (to work) in a typewriting office in the City.»

Next day Mrs. Sunbury (to arrange) the tea very stylishly. Herbert (to give) the tea -table a glance of surprise as he (to usher) the girl into the sitting -room. Mrs. Sunbury (to cast) a look at Betty's make up and dress and (to take) an instant dislike to her. But she (to decide) to behave like a lady. She (to talk) about the weather. She (to pour) out tea and (to ask) Herbert to give a cup to his lady friend. Then she (to cut) the cake and (to press) a large piece on her guest. Betty (to take) a bite at it and when she (to put) it in her saucer it (to fall) to the ground.

«Oh, I (to be) sorry,» (to say) the girl, as she (to pick) it up.

«It doesn't matter at all, I (to cut) you another piece,» said Mrs. Sunbury.

«Oh, don't bother. I (not to be) particular. The floor (to be) clean.»

«I hope so,» said Mrs. Sunbury with an acid smile, «but I wouldn't dream of letting you eat a piece of cake that (to be) on the floor.»

«But I (not to want) any more, Mrs. Sunbury.»

«I (to be) sorry you (not to like) my cake.»

«It's not that. It (to be) a beautiful cake, it's only that I (not to be) hungry.»

Betty (to refuse) to have more tea. But when Herbert (to light) a cigarette, she (to say) to him: «Give me one, too, please. I (to die) for a smoke.»

Mrs. Sunbury (not to say) anything to that. She only (to raise) her eyebrows slightly. But Betty (not to be) such a fool as not to see that Herbert's mother (to do) all she could to make her uncomfortable and she (to be) offended. She (to want) to go, but she (not to know) quite how to manage it.

Finally Herbert said: «Well, Betty, I think it's about time we were getting along. I (to

walk) back with you.»

«It (to be) a pleasure to see you, Miss Bevan, I'm sure,» said Mrs. Sunbury, rising to her feet.

An hour later Herbert (to come) back and there (to be) quite a scene between him and his mother.

No reference (to be) made next day to what (to pass).

Ex. 86. Revision: use the required tense -aspect forms in the following text:

The moon now (to cast) its light on the bridge. Turning to Finch, Sylvia (can) see his face clearly. She (to think) of him as an artist, absorbed in his own life, successful as a concert pianist. But now she (to see) his vulnerability, the marks left by the suffering of a nature too sensitive for the harsh encounters of life.

He (to be) conscious of the gentle compassion of her face. He (to smile) and (to say): «I'd like to go to my new house and see it in this light. The moon (to be) full and when we (to get) there it (to shine) right in at the large window. Would you come with me? It's not far.»

They (to return) to the house to tell that they (to leave).

They (to walk) in silence, their shadows distinct on the white road. The air (to be) vibrant with the shrilling of the locusts.

«What a strange feeling they (to give) one,» said Sylvia, «As though there were no time to spare.»

«There isn't,» said Finch.

She said, with regret rather than bitterness, «And I (to waste) so much of mine.»

As Finch (to consider) what to say to that, she (to add), «I (to waste) some of my time in a nervous breakdown.»

«I (to know) what nerves (to be). I (to go) through hell with mine.»

They (to be) now in a wooded grove and before long (to stand) on the terrace of his house. Moonlight (to lie) on the stones. The front door (to stand) open. Finch (to lead) Sylvia into the music room.

«You (to like) it?» he demanded.

«I do,» she answered earnestly. «I think it's the most adorable room I ever (to see).»

«Oh, I say,» he (to exclaim) in gratification. «That's too much. I (not to expect) that.»

He (to go) and (to stand) by the piano, the tips of his fingers just touching the keys.

«I (to play)?» he asked.

«Please do.»

He (to turn) on the light of a lamp. She (to sit) down where she (can) see his face as he (to play).

«A little Bach first,» he said.

Sylvia (to smile) and (to nod). She (to sit) still as a statue, while he (to play). Sometimes the intricacies of the Bach (to steal) her senses. She (can) not see the player. At other times she scarcely (to hear) the music but (to be) conscious only of the flying hands. Their isolation (to appear) so complete to her that the house they (to leave) (to seem) far away.

She (to become) conscious after a time that Finch no longer (to play) Bach but Beethoven. Her imagination now (to turn) back to the time of her girlhood in Ireland, to the time when she (to feel) safe, when her father and mother (to stand) between her

and the world. How wonderful it all (to be)!

An hour (to pass) and Finch still (to play). But now he (to remember) her presence. His hands (to rest) on the keys and he (to ask): «Tired?»

«No, rested! Please go on.»

He (to give) her a glance of appreciation and (to go) on playing.

At last, pale but bright-eyed, he (to rise) and (to come) to her. He (to sit) down beside her, looking anxiously into her face.

«I (to be) an egotistical brute,» he said, «You must be terribly tired.»

«I (not to feel) so truly rested in years.»

«I can't tell you what it (to mean) to me, having you here.» Then he (to add), with something of an effort: «The last thing I (to play) - you (to notice) it?»

«I (to think) it (to be) enchanting.»

«It's something I (to work) at odd times. I (not to play) it through till tonight. I (to play) it very badly.»

«And it (to be) your own?»

«Yes.»

«I see the moon (to be) gone. It must be terribly late.»

«I (to take) you back in my car, but not till I (to make) you some coffee.»

Ex. 87. Revision: use the required tense -aspect forms in the following text:

Then John (to go) up the long walk to his house. The house (to be) old and strong and there (to be) lights in a few windows. His grandfather (to add) this huge porch which (to extend) all about the house. Here on rainy days he (to play) with his brother or (to sit) alone, listening or reading, or talking with his father. What they (to talk) about? He (not to remember).

John (to stand) there now, looking at the still porch in the faint light that (to come) through the windows and from the street lamp and thinking of his brother.

One early spring evening when he (to return) from school he (to pass) here. It (to rain) all day and now the whispering sound of the rain (to be) on the air, rustling mysteriously through new leaves, and a wind (to sigh) down the long porch, which (to be) empty. Then he (to hear) a sound of sobbing, dismal and faint, and he (to turn) and (to walk) a short distance down the porch, which (to echo) with his footsteps, and he (to find) his brother, then twelve years old, crouched on the floor. He (to lift) his head at John's approach and (to stop) his sobbing, but he still (to crouch) there desolately.

John said, «What you (to do) here, crying like a baby?»

His brother (not to answer) for a moment or two, and then he (to say): «Father (to laugh) at one of my paintings. He (to say) I (to have) no talent.»

John (to say) bluntly to his brother, «I (not to know) if you (to have) any talent. But I (to know) that Father (not to have) any.»

His brother (to catch) his breath, and then slowly (to rise) to his feet. «You (to mean) that, John?»

«Sure I (to mean) it. If you (to have) talent it (to show). That's all it should mean to you. If you (to start) listening to people, and their advice, you never (to amount) to anything.» And he (to walk) away and (to leave) him.

He (to stand) alone on this hot July night, completely exhausted, and he (to remember) that rainy twilight and his brother. It (to be) certainly strange how things (to return) to

a man when he least (to expect) them.

He (to open) the hall door and (to go) inside. The hall (to be) long and wide and the ceiling (to be) high. His mother (to paint) the dark wood in her favorite shade of pale grey, and she (to remove) the heavy old dark furniture and (to replace) it with graceful pieces beautifully arranged. She also (to hang) a crystal chandelier from the ceiling. A few of the lamps (to be) lighted now.

His mother (to come) through the door, and her thin silk dress (to rustle) as she (to move). She (to smile) but her eyes (to be) anxious. «Dear John,» she said, «I (to be) worried about you. Why, you (to look) so tired.» She (to glance) down at his hands. She (to see) they (to be) red and the skin (to appear) dry and so she (to know) he (to operate). He (to see) her glance, and (to say), «Yes, I (). Don't ask me who. I (to tell) you later.»

Passive Voice Forms

Ex. 1. State the kind of the passive construction in the following sentences:

1. The question was often put to me but I never answered it. 2. «Where is Frank?» «He's being taken care of.» 3. It was decided that their marriage should take place in December. 4. He had been seen to nod in quiet agreement with his wife's words. 5. Bell was looked on as a sweet -tempered young man. 6. I noticed at once that the room had been recently tidied. 7. That afternoon we had our first history lesson, and the teacher showed us pictures of mastodons. It was explained to us that the men in those days had almost no chance of protecting themselves against such monsters. 8. «Where did you hear that?» «I was told by a man I know.» 9. Blair is not in his room, and his bed hasn't been slept in. 10. Next day no reference was made to the scene. 11. The driver was mysteriously silent. Eric was silent, too, wondering uneasily where he was being taken. 12. None of the boys liked the new teacher, but French got taught. 13. «Why did you allow him to do anything so silly, Henry?» «I had no means of stopping him. And of course I was lied to as usual.» 14. Mr. Smith was expected to return shortly. 15. I had been given a card to the Club and in the afternoon I used to go there to play bridge.

Ex. 2. Turn the following active constructions into passive ones omitting all mention of the agent of the action:

1. No one has made any mistakes. 2. What do you call it? 3. They asked us to stay a little longer. 4. One expects him to obey the regulations. 5. People have made great progress in physics. 6. They are discussing the possibility of new negotiations. 8. Everybody thought that Jack was clever but lazy. 9. People use coal for making artificial materials, 10. People say it is difficult. 11. What books are people reading this year? 12. They elected him President of the Club last year. 13. They are rehearsing a new play at the National Theatre. 14. Someone found the children in the morning. 15. Nobody has ever treated me with such kindness. 16. He knew that they had sent the invitations out two weeks earlier. 17. They can arrange all things. 18. People expect you to meet the chief. 19. Are they sending for you? 20. They have always passed his telephone calls through to the Minister without questions. 21. They never took any major decision without his knowledge or advice. 22. I knew that they had told him of

the meeting at once. 23. The trouble started when they told me to change the way we were running this department. 24. There was a tear in his trousers which someone had already darned. 25. In his circle they looked on the police as enemies. 26. They took the child to the hospital for the poor. 27. Ever since I started asking questions about my sister they have lied to me. 28. People talked of the house for miles. 29. I'm sure they will look better after him in an army hospital. 30. When the situation called for a lie, he lied firmly and well.

Ex. 3. Supply the required passive forms of the verbs in brackets:

1. Aunt Dinah (not to like) by my father's family; she (to consider) vulgar. 2. After his brother's departure Paul sat for a long time thinking about what (to say). 3. «I'm not prepared,» my father said, «to listen to your suggestions that you never (to treat) fairly at school.» 4. In the drawing -room the music of Mozart (to play) by an orchestra seen on the screen. 5. «Remember I (to play) by the hour,» grumbled the driver. 6. But there were signs that order (to restore) in the town. 7. I (to receive) by one of the chiefs and (to take) for lunch to the canteen. 8. Well, what (to do) about it, Ted? 9. He went into the bedroom. The bed (to turn) down for the night by the maid many hours before. 10. I said we yet (not to teach) anything. 11. Please find out if your father (to see) to leave. 12. She could have gone to Cambridge if she had wanted, she (to offer) a scholarship. 13. He arrived just after the electricity (to cut), and Joseph was lighting the oil -lamps. 14. On Friday she (to give) two weeks notice at the Works. 15. Then the voice announced that the passengers (to beg) to pass through the Customs. 16. I wondered to what extent she (to influence) by his name to accept the offer. 17. Meg (to look) upon as the perfect wife for a clergyman. 18. Such are the matters that (to deal) with in Mr. Qimson's book. 19. He (to see) entering the school building just when the first student (to call) upon to read aloud from Beowulf. 20. Ahead of us the port lay in a flood of lights. Two cargo -ships (to unload). 21. I found the idea of going to Hereford very upsetting because I (to promise) a very nice job a couple of weeks before. 22. Not far away she noticed the film manager in whose office she once (to make) to feel so ridiculous. 23. «You must be very prosperous, Eustace, to own a car like that.» «This car (to lend) me by an American woman.» 24. I felt I (to catch) out boasting. 25. I could not tell him that I had spent the money I (to leave) in order to get myself a house. 26. After lunch, we heard that Charles (to send) for. 27. She (to operate) on at seven o'clock next morning. 28. Their engagement (to announce) and a number of parties (to give) for the young couple: 29. I said, «Our dog (to run) over, but we're going to have another.» 30. The days that followed afterward (to look) back on by Philip as a kind of nightmare.

Ex. 4. Translate the following sentences into English using passive constructions:

1. Вниз по этой улице строится новый квартал домов. 2. Его еще никогда не принимали за англичанина. 3. В твоей комнате ничего не тронули с тех пор, как тебя послали в санаторий. 4. Тебя интересует работа, которую тебе предложили? 5. За каждый пенни нужно отчитаться. 6. Вас когда -нибудь учили, как надо вести себя? 7. Его пришлось прооперировать. 8. Детей угостили мороженым. 9. У меня украли коллекцию марок. 10. Со мной так никогда не разговаривали. 11. Посмотри! Кто -то пролил чай на скатерть. 12. Уроки нужно сделать более

интересными. 13. Надо что -то сделать для этих людей. 14. В футбол играют во всем мире. 15. Боюсь, что эту вазу нельзя починить. 16. На день рождения ей подарили коробку шоколадных: конфет. 17. О его приятеле хорошо отзываются. 18. Студентам велели, подождать за дверью. 19. Моего дядю произвели в капитаны. 20. Постороннего попросили уйти с собрания. 21. Тебе скажут, когда отправляется поезд. 22. Она чувствовала, что от нее что -то скрывают. 23. Будет так темно, что меня совсем не будет видно. 24. Я почувствовал, что ему уже задавали этот вопрос раньше. 25. Меня послали спать. 26. Он сидел, опустив голову на руки. Он не слышал, что в это -время говорилось. 27. Мы узнаем, хорошо ли за ним смотрели. 28. Ему дали первоклассное образование. 29. Что-нибудь делается, чтобы восстановить это здание? 30. Ему предложили эту работу, а она ему не нужна.

Ex. 5. Turn the following active constructions into passive ones, using 'it' as subject wherever necessary:

1. He explained to me that almost everything the children were taught at school was unnecessary. 2. I had no suitable girl to take to the party and they arranged that I should partner Dick's sister. 3. It was not easy to see what to do about Jack, and someone proposed that he should come and stay with us. 4. He explained to me the reference to the book. 5. I mentioned the fact to my friends. 6. They request that you should write it again. 7. A guide pointed out the Pyramids to us. 8. They arranged the party on Saturday. 9. They discovered him at home two hours later. 10. They said there had been a boy who broke this rule of the school once. 11. Someone proposed my father's health. 12. At lunch somebody mentioned to me that the Johnsons had come from abroad. 13. Everyone knew that her father had gone to a place some distance away on an important business. 14. Somebody reported the accident to the police. 15. They announced on the radio that the peace treaty between the two countries had been signed. 16. Somebody discovered that he had left for Europe two days before. 17. Someone pointed out to us that the camp was deserted. 18. They expected that the Minister would interview him. 19. The weather was warm and somebody suggested a walk to the river. 20. They demanded that I should stay behind. 21. They believed that I had to attend a family party. 22. Everyone understood that I was to drive the family to inspect the new house. 23. Everyone noticed his absence. 24. No one believed his story. 25. They demanded an explanation from him.

Ex. 6. Translate the following sentences into English, using passive constructions with, wherever necessary, it' as subject:

1. По радио было объявлено, что погода меняется к худшему. 2. Ему показали эту женщину, и он к ней подошел. 3. Я сомневаюсь, что сейчас что -либо может быть объяснено. 4. Договорились, что она подождет его в гостинице. 5. Сообщение было объявлено по радио. 6. Ей объяснили, кем мы все являемся. 7. Ожидалось, что он вернется как раз к собранию. 8. Было намечено, что он вернется как раз к собранию. 9. Было замечено, что он никогда не звонит по телефону к себе домой с работы. 10. Ему объяснили, почему он неправ. 11. Ему было указано на его ошибки. 12. К юго-западу от города были обнаружены значительные запасы руды. 13. Ожидались большие изменения в

производственной политике компании. 14. Не думалось, что он долго проработает с нами. 15. Говорили, что ему не легко было сделать это. 16. Ходят слухи, что он уехал в Канаду. 17. Было решено, что выплата была незаконной. 18. О потере документа доложили руководству. 19. Ей было указано, что она зашла слишком далеко. 20. Его храбрость была хорошо известна в полку.

Ex. 7. Explain why the agent of the action is mentioned in the following passive constructions:

1. The house will be locked up for the summer and it will be looked after by the gardener. 2. I was lent the book by a friend. 3. His business has been taken over by a bigger firm. 4. I was deeply struck by her beauty. 5. The dam may be broken by a sudden increase in water pressure. 6. The little boat was overturned by a huge wave. 7. Many valuable pictures were destroyed by the fire. 8. They had been caught by the war in Australia. 9. Milly was awakened by the telephone's insistent ringing. 10. One of his favorite pastimes was collecting clocks. He already had a most remarkable collection, which was admired by his friends and envied by his fellow-collectors. 11. Suddenly the silence was shattered by a mob of schoolchildren, all shouting and screaming. 12. It was believed that the fire was caused by a short circuit in the lift machinery.

Ex. 8. Say whether the passive forms in the following sentences express an action or a state - resulting from a previously accomplished action:

1. The car stopped and the near-side door was opened. 2. Warren said, «Well, my question is answered.» 3. The Prime Minister's forthcoming talks in Washington were officially announced on the radio. 4. His calculations were proved wrong. 5. The piano is not tuned. 6. The arrival of the plane was announced over the loudspeakers. 7. The symphony was performed for the first time last week. 8. It is decided to open a new branch next year. 9. You'll be given new instructions before you leave. 10. All your words will be taken down. 11. All the dishes were washed up. 12. His instructions are not carried out. 13. He was finally persuaded to enter politics. 14. His parents' home was now closed to him. 15. Such things are said of talented people.

Ex. 9. Use the required passive tense -aspect forms in the following sentences, observing the difference between the passive of action and the passive of state:

1. The house (to lock) up when they set off. 2. The house (to lock) up before they set off. 3. He wished to know if his instructions (to carry) out. 4. Talking of Susan, Milly (to remind) of something she once (to tell). 5. The officials usually make careful inquiries into the applicant's character. Then he (to give) a trial, discreetly (to watch), and if the impression is unfavorable politely (to thank) and (to tell) that his services no longer (to need). 6. Wherever I went I found that the camp (to leave) in a disgraceful condition. 7. Wherever I went I found evidence that the camp (to leave) only a short while before we arrived. 8. From where I stood the house (to hide) by lime trees. 9. Everything (to prepare) for the ball. The front lawn (to floor) and (to tent); palms and azaleas (to place) round it. 10. Dan had a car waiting and open country easily (to reach) in those days. 11. Looking over his shoulder I saw that the note (to write) in pencil and on a whole sheet of paper. 12. We went to the back of the house and he tried another door. «Everything (to shut) up,» he said. 13. Sometimes he would drive away

for a whole day. His errands never (to explain). 14. «How do you find the cooking?» «Unchanged.» «When the cook (to hire), your aunt gave her ten menus, and they never (to vary) since.» 15. «I am so sorry to miss so much of your visit. You (to look) after properly?» Mr. Ryder asked me. 16. I've just been to the garage trying to get a car but everything (to lock). 17. Then dinner (to announce), and we went to the dining -room where the subject (not to mention). 18. The idea, however, seemed to take root in his mind; when, a few days later, we spoke of the matter again it firmly (to establish). 19. When I arrived the family were in the sitting -room. Tea (to clear) away and the curtains (to draw). 20. When I stayed at the hotel I always (to give) the room I had had on my first visit. 21. His house in Hertford Street was large enough for them both, and lately (to furnish) and (to decorate) by the most expensive firm. 22. His house was large, and it completely (to furnish) and (to decorate). 23. «It's the first time I ever (to take) out to dinner at a restaurant,» she said. 24. Then he looked round furtively to see if he (to observe). 25. He was lying in bed. His eyes (to close). 26. One day I (to summon) to the War Office. I (to interview) there and (to put) on a list. I (to call) for if there was an emergency. Everything (to get) ready for the coming war. 27. Then, though her hand (to raise), she stopped and threw the stick away. 28. At the beginning of May the engagement (to announce). Rex (to dismay) and (to perplex) by this new development. 29. The date for her wedding (to fix)? 30. After his aunt (to bury) her will (to read).

Ex. 10. Revision: use the required passive forms in the following short texts:

I. It was now a charming room. The walls (to paint) light blue. The curtains (to draw) and the fire (to light). All the furniture (to dust). The piano (to move) out but a wireless set (to add). On the chest of drawers there was a collection of small presents which (to bring) to the old woman at various times by her children.

No one there could understand a word he said, but an interpreter (to send) for, his papers (to examine) and he (to tell) that he (to fly) back by the first plane.

III. The reception was all that (to expect). When we arrived we (to show) into some kind of hall where we (to detain) with the rest of the actors. Apparently we (not to allow) yet to mingle with the other crowd.

As the guests assembled in the room, it was plain to me that they (to choose) carefully. Looking around, I recognized Anthony Blanche. He (to point) out to me often in the streets. I (to interrupt) in my observation by a woman reporter whom the manager had led up to me. I (to warn) against the dangers of being interviewed by strangers. As we (to introduce) I made up my mind to avoid it at any cost.

IV. It was Saturday night and Pete sat watching TV. People (to kill) by the hour on the screen. Policemen (to shoot) in the line of duty, gangsters (to throw) off roofs, and an elderly lady slowly (to poison) for her pearls, and her murderer (to bring) to justice by a cigarette company after long discussions which (to hold) in the office of a private detective. Villains holding guns (to leap) at by brave, unarmed actors, and ingénues (to save) from deaths by the quick -thinking young men.

V. The Connolly children (to find) lurking under the seats of a carriage when the train (to empty). They (to drag) out and (to stand) on the platform. Since they could not (to leave) there, they (to include) in the party that (to send) by bus to the village. From that moment their destiny for ever (to involve) with that of the village. Nothing ever (to discover) about the children's parents.

Ex. 11. Revision: use the required active and passive tense -aspect forms in the following texts:

I. At the last glow of sunset, they (to board) the airplane in inverse order of seniority beginning with the sergeant and ending with General Spitz. The plane they (to provide) with was luxurious for the wartime. It (to fit) with seats. Little lights (to glow) along the roof. Soon the doors (to shut). The lights (to go) out. It (to be) now completely dark. What once (to be) windows' (to paint) out. The roar of the engine (to impose) silence on the party. Dan, who (to put) himself next to the cockpit, (to long) for a forbidden cigarette and (to try) to compose himself for sleep, though it (to be) far from his normal bedtime. He (to wear) the same shirt all day without a chance of changing. In the hot afternoon it (to be) damp with sweat. Now in the chill upper air it (to cling) to him and (to set) him shivering. It (not to occur) to him to bring his greatcoat. It (to be) an unsatisfactory day. He (to wander) about the streets of the old town with the Lieutenant. They (to lunch) at the club and (to order) to report at the airfield two hours before they (to need). He (not to dine) and (to see) no hope of doing so. He (to sit) in black boredom and discomfort until, after an hour, sleep (to come).

II. I once (to know) a village teacher who (to be) partially blind. He (to deprive) of one eye as the result of infection. His blind eye (to take) out, and a glass one (to insert) in its socket in its stead.

One day the teacher (to need) to leave his class of small children alone for half an hour or so. But he (to hold) back by one consideration. The children of the class (to be) really unruly. He (to know) that if they (to leave) alone for any length of time they (to become) violent and complaints (to make) by their parents.

Suddenly he (to strike) by an idea. In a moment his glass eye (to take) out of its socket, and (to place) on the table.

«Now, children,» he said, «I (to go) out for a few minutes but you (to observe) all the time by my eye. If anything (to do) which (not to approve) by me it (to see) by my eye, and the child (to punish) when I (to return).

The children (to impress) very much, and the teacher (to go) off.

But when he (to return) an hour later it (to seem) that a hurricane (to pass) through the classroom. The teacher (to astound). «Evidently,» he thought, «I (to outwit). I wonder how.»

In the classroom tables (to overturn), the walls (to spatter) with ink from ink -bombs which (to throw) during a battle which still (to fight) out as a manifestation of high spirits. In fact, a good time (to have) by all.

The teacher (to wonder) why the presence of his glass eye (not to respect). He (to look) round for it and (to see) that it (to cover) by a hat.

Modal Verbs

Ex. 1. Explain the meanings of 'can' in the following sentences:

1. But the next day she was not well. She could not leave her cabin. 2. We can discuss it now, clause by clause. 3. My son is not in town; but he will be before long. Can I give him any message? 4. What on earth induced her to behave as she did, I never could understand. She could have married anybody she chose. 5. Can I smoke, Mr. Hawkins? 6. I ate the next course grimly to an end; she couldn't have been enjoying her meal much either. 7. We'll get you into the next room, and you can lie on the sofa for a bit. 8. What can have happened to change him so much? 9. Can there have been any misunderstanding in our first encounter? 10. The teacher said they could all go home. 11. A policeman arrived and told him he couldn't park there. 12. Can he have changed now? Do you think it possible? 13. How did he get to know it? Who can he have been talking to? 14. «There's no such train.» «We came by it.» «You can't have.» 15. «Life,» the old man said, «can only be understood backward. Now I see clearly all the mistakes I made and could have avoided.»

Ex. 2. State in which of the following sentences the form 'could' is (1) the Past Indefinite of 'can', (2) a form expressing unreality, (3) a more polite form of 'can' and (4) a form implying more uncertainty than 'can':

1. She would often say that no one but she could control the little girl. 2. Could you bring me some paper, please, to write my note on? 3. Milly asked what time it was, and her mother said it couldn't be more than one. 4. It was time for me to be getting back too, and I could have walked back with him. But I knew somehow that 'he didn't want that, so. I sat for a few minutes watching him as he went down the road. 5. From where I was I could see the clear profile of his face. 6. «Do you know what time we arrive at the frontier?» «I'm afraid I couldn't tell you exactly.» 7. «It's impossible,» exclaimed Phil. «He couldn't have done it.» 8. It could not be done under the present circumstances. 9. You have no idea, I suppose, who could have been there. 10. You are Agatha, aren't you? I could not be mistaken.

Ex. 3. Turn the following sentences into unreal statements and translate both variants into Russian:

Note: Change the form of the infinitive if necessary.

1. He's obstinate. Nothing can move him. 2. No one can ever tell when he is being serious and when he is joking. 3. In the dimness of the room I could not see him very well. 4. You know I can never refuse you. 5. Roger told me that she could run his small establishment better than any paid housekeeper. 6. No one could tell me where he lived. 7. He's very good at all that. You can learn a lot from him. 8. The trouble was I couldn't do anything else. 9. She cannot tell us the truth. 10. She could not tell us the truth then.

Ex. 4. Make the following sentences containing 'can' more polite or less categorical:

1. «What can I do for you?» he asked in cordial tones. 2. Can I see John now? 3. Pat, my dear, where can you have got such a foolish idea? 4. What difference can it make? 5. I'm hungry. Can I have my tea? 6. I know a very nice little place up the hill where

we can have dinner.7. «We've brought you something!» cried Edward. «Whatever can it be?» 8. «But you don't understand me. Hugh hates me.» «He can't.» 9. I don't believe you've forgotten our song. You can't have done it.» 10. «But the door is locked.» «I expect we can open it.» 11. «In the end he insisted on walking in the rain.» «He can't be so silly.» 12. And I've got a bit of money. We can get ourselves a nice flat. 13. They are all watching the Telly, so you can have your supper in peace. 14. Can this woman be Lousie? She can't have changed so much. 15. She can't have told you that I don't believe you.

Ex. 5. Use the required form of the infinitive after 'can' ('could') in the following sentences:

1. Her face was quite unlined and she could not (to be) more than thirty. 2. I'm wondering if something can (to do) about it. 3. Her friend said quickly: «I know where you can (to get) your bicycle fixed.» 4. «You couldn't (to worry) too much,» Jack was tempted say, «if you're still out at one thirty in the morning.» 5. It's impossible. He can't (to do) it. 6. There wasn't anything wrong with tea. There couldn't (to be). 7. Harry's story disappointed him because if the girl had been with him at half past eight she couldn't (to be) at Hexley at the same time. 8. She lay, raised up rather high upon the pillow, her eyes closed and her hair undone. She could not (to sleep), though it would have been hard to say quite how this was evident. 9. «Have you seen anything of Roberta lately?» «Not for ages. I don't know what she can (to do).» 10. He couldn't (to hear) the news at dinner because his sister hadn't arrived yet.

Ex. 6. Explain the possible ways 1) of expressing negation in sentences with 'can' used in the meaning of improbability in (A) and 2) of building up special questions with 'can' used for emotional coloring in (B):

A) 1. I was staggered by his youth. He could not have been much over thirty. 2. «They say he was her lover,» replied the man. «She can never have had one,» said Rosalia, with a laugh of scorn. 3. You could hardly expect Father to let you stay here under the circumstances. 4. I don't think the idea can ever have occurred to him before.

B) 1. Who can he be? She has never had a visitor before. 2. «I think she had something to do with the book.» «What can she have done?» 3. I don't understand how you can have been so nice, and then do something so cruel. 4. «Somebody drew a pair of spectacles on the face of the portrait.» «Who do you think could have done it?» 5. The young woman rose from the yellow hammock. Mary's first thought was how she could have been lying in a hammock and remained so tidy.

Ex. 7. Translate the following sentences into English using 'can' in all of its possible meanings:

1. Ты мо г бы пер вести этот текст? 2. Эту книгу мо жно купить в любом магазине. 3. Он мог бы сделать это на прошлой неделе. Он не был особенно занят. 4. Он не мог показать нам расчеты, так как они - не были готовы. 5. В комнате темно, я не могу найти свои вещи. 6. Не мо жет быть, что бы о на ошиблась. 7. Неужели они ждали нас все это время? 8. Не может быть, чтобы вас послали ко мне. Я не имею к этому никакого отношения. 9. Можно мне чаю? 10.

Он сказал, что мы можем идти. 11. Я могу вернуться на автобусе. 12. Я мог бы вернуться на автобусе. 13. Морис уставился на письмо. «И откуда оно могло прийти?» 14. Эванс был настолько неграмотным, что он просто не мог написать ни одного слова этого доклада. 15. «Она не поняла тебя», - вскричал Филипп. - «Она поняла меня достаточно хорошо». - «Не может быть, что она тебя поняла», - повторил он упрямо. 16. Дорога пешком назад в гостиницу оказалась очень длинной, и он никогда не проделал бы ее без карты. 17. У нее было квадратное лицо, которое, вероятно, никогда не выглядело молодым. 18. На что ты смотришь, Вилли? - Ни на что. - Нельзя смотреть ни на что. 19. Она сказала более громким голосом: «Ты слышишь меня?» 20. Сейчас она уже могла бы вернуться из отпуска. Но тогда она не могла уехать, так как существовала возможность, что придет Барт. 21. Никто не смог бы произвести на меня большее впечатление, чем это сделал ты. 22. В тот момент я мог бы убить его. 23. Ему не могло быть больше тридцати лет, когда мы с ним познакомились впервые. 24. Я умел плавать, когда мне было пять лет. Папа научил меня. 25. Они очень милы со мной. Просто невозможно было быть более вежливыми и услужливыми.

Ex. 8. Explain the meanings of 'may' in the following sentences:

1. Of course I'm too young to be a really good writer yet, but I try hard, and one day I may achieve something. 2. I asked him if I might come over to remove something that I had left in a book I had loaned him. 3. «I'm so glad you didn't wait, Agnes,» Mr. Logan said in a tone which clearly meant «I think you might have waited.» 4. «What's happened to the dog?» «It isn't here. Dan may have taken it with him.» 5. Harry might often be seen sitting on the porch with a pipe in his mouth. 6. Archer looked touchingly white and weak. He had been through a hard time. He might have died. 7. «Then may I send Kate to you?» «But of course.» 8. «Oh, Philip,» she exclaimed, «your boots are muddy! You might have gone by the side door.» 9. She longed for a letter from John. It might contain an explanation of why he had gone away. 10. «What shall you do to amuse yourself?» she asked. «Well,» I said playing for time, «I might do several things.» 11. There was so much they had shared together and so much more they might have shared that they had not.

Ex. 9. State in which of the following sentences the form 'might' is (1) the Past Indefinite of 'may', (2) a form expressing unreality, (3) a more polite form of 'may' and (4) a form implying more uncertainty than 'may':

1. I asked if he might bring his wife down next Saturday. 2. «Where do you suppose he is now?» «He might be in New York.» 3. «I thought the picture might interest you,» Maurice said innocently. 4. «Did she say where she was going?» «No.» «Humph! She might have left a message.» 5. «Might I look round?» he asked. 6. I said that I might have other problems to raise. 7. We're going to lunch with some neighbors tomorrow. Mother thinks you might be bored. Would you like to stay at home?

Ex. 10. Make the following sentences containing 'may' more polite or less categorical:

1. May I ask you a question? 2. She gave a shrug of impatience. «This affair may well

fade into nothing.» 3. I heard Arthur make a slight noise which may have been a sigh or a chuckle. 4. My main task is to find out why he killed himself. It may all be terribly simple. He may have done it because of his wife. 5. She may not find it all that easy to get a job. 6. May I have a taxi called? 7. You're welcome to come with me. You may notice things that I miss. 8. On the last evening my mother and I sat together in the drawing -room. It was our one formal room and I think my mother may have chosen it for its moral effect.

Ex. 11. Use the required form of the infinitive after 'may' ('might') in the following sentences:

1. On the whole there was less said than might (to expect). 2. Don't turn on the light. This fellow may (to lurk) outside the house door. 3. You've acquired a great deal of experience. You might (to write) a book. 4. There was no sign of John in the street. Of course, I said to myself, he might (to detain) at his office. 5. «Who said Mr. Sorrel had gone to America?» «He might (to tell) it himself.» 6. Strickland is very ill. He may (to die). 7. Jack had the feeling that Maurice might one day (to break) down. 8. But what you tell me may not (to be) true. 9. I was deeply shocked and worried. «It is no easy matter to find the man,» the doctor said to me. He might (to read) my thoughts. 10. He may not (to want) to become a publisher in the first place, but once he had taken it up the profession had appeared to absorb all his interests.

Ex. 12. Translate the following sentences into English using 'may' in all of its possible meanings:

1. Ты не был так уж сильно занят. Ты мог бы нам помочь. 2. Спроси его, можно ли нам осмотреть лабораторию. 3. Он мог бы сделать это для вас. Ему это совсем не трудно. 4. Он чуть не разбил окно. 5. Она, может быть, опоздает. 6. Они, возможно, работают над этой же проблемой. 7. К вечеру может пойти дождь. 8. Их, возможно, не было вчера в городе. 9. Я подумал, что если его часы были там, то и деньги могли оказаться там тоже. 10. Я согласен, что разрешить Питеру поехать за границу, возможно, было ошибкой. Но я думал, что это, может быть, вернет его к работе. 11. Я, может быть, не упоминал об этом в своих письмах, но я проделал там довольно большую работу. 12. Не увидев ни своего отца, ни мальчика, Мегги подумала, что они, быть может, представляют книги на полках. 13. Вы, возможно, слышали его имя. 14. Мне пришло в голову, что он втайне гордился сыном, хотя он, быть может, и не знал этого. 15. У него большая семья. Я могу себе представить, что он, возможно, ищет себе работу по лучше. 16. У меня было впечатление, что гроза может разразиться в любой момент. 17. Она не была шведкой, но ее можно было принять за шведку. 18. Может быть, он сейчас в гостинице и ждет меня. 19. Я чуть не опоздал на последний автобус. 20. Они, возможно, подумали, что мы не придем в такой дождь.

Ex. 13. Revision: fill in the blanks with 'can' ('could') or 'may' ('might'):

1. When they told me I was cured and ... go, I ... tell you I was more afraid than glad. 2. His letter ... have given them the idea. 3. His knee touched the bottom. He crawled further and at last lay full length on the pebbles. He now felt so tired he ... not understand how a moment ago he ... have been capable of swimming. 4. You've done

me a great service. I knew I '... trust you. 5. Her mother said she ... play with me if she wished. 6. He's a nice boy. I'm glad you brought him out here. We ... have some fun. 7. He looked at the lighted window of the cottage. He '... see into a kitchen where two women were sitting by the table drinking tea. 8. She has attractive eyes. There's something about them that holds you. She ... have been pretty once. 9. When he married her she ... not have been more than sixteen. 10. He boasted and told the most extraordinary stories which I'm sure ... not possibly have been truly. 1. She ... not think what he was doing. Something ... have happened to him. 12. You ... not have proved that I wrote the letter because I didn't. 13. It never occurred to me that I ... get measles. 14. I was just going to tell you -because of the storm I ... not be home tonight. 15. That is exactly what he did say. But I won't talk any more about it. He ... not have been himself. 16. «To my mind she is a beautiful woman.» «Well, yes. But I don't see what you ... have found to say to her.» 17. He hurled the heavy thing down the stairs. It made an extraordinary noise in its descent and woke Joe sleeping in his pram. The only thing I ... say to that was: «You ... have killed Joe.» 18. «I see one of my statuettes has been broken.» «I ... not think what ... have happened to it.» 19. He thought it likely that Blair ... have got away unnoticed. 20. It was dark and I ... only see the glimmer of his face. 21. You have acted very irresponsibly and you ... find yourself in serious trouble. 22. After all we don't even know if your sister is proposing to stay in London. She ... be just passing through on her way to somewhere else. 23. One ... not get anything done nowadays. 24. «Come inside in front of the fire where you ... warm up,» she said quickly. 25. But I really feel that the late Mr. Evans ... not have been a nice man.

Ex. 14. Revision: translate the following sentences into English using 'can' ('could') and 'may' ('might'):

1. Может быть, пойдет дождь. 2. Может быть, дождя не будет. 3. Не может быть, чтобы пошел дождь. 4. Неужели будет дождь? 5. Может быть, он уже видел их. 6. Может быть, он не видел их. 7. Не может быть, чтобы он видел их. 8. Просто не может быть, чтобы он видел их. 9. Неужели он видел их? 10. И где это он мог их видеть? 11. Может быть, они ждут нас. 12. Может быть, они не ждут нас. 13. Не может быть, чтобы они ждали нас. 14. Неужели они ждут нас? 15. И кого это они могут ждать? 16. Просто не может быть, чтобы они ждали нас. 17. Я, пожалуй, пойду. 18. Я, пожалуй, лучше останусь дома. 19. Я чуть не потерял ключи. 20. Все могло бы быть гораздо хуже.

Ex. 15. Explain the meanings of 'must' in the following sentences:

1. The children must brush their own shoes. 2. His mind turned to the incident. It was the kind of thing which must not occur again. 3. Dear Paula, there is no point in delaying the happy news. I know how much you must have been waiting and expecting. 4. I always have a warm corner for Roberta. I must try and find her before I go abroad. 5. It's lovely to have you home. We must have a party to celebrate. 6. You must give it back to me before you go. 7. «When is your mother to return?» «Next month.» «You must miss her terribly.» 8. Must you work hard? 9. You mustn't tell anyone about it. 10. «My god, I never thought they'd let me in there again,» he said. «They must have regretted doing so in view of your behavior.»

Ex. 16. Notice the use of 'must' in reported speech in the following sentences and translate them Into Russian:

1. He was white and frightened and ready to weep as she told him that he must go. 2. Because a thing like coal had once been profitable they thought it must always be profitable. 3. She had already decided that she must show the letter to Alan. 4. The way she spoke made me think that she must be very much in love. 5. He asked where I had picked up such a word. I realized that it must have been a wrong word, but I had read it in some book and liked its sound.

Ex. 17. Use the required form of the infinitive after 'must':

1. Both sisters must (to be) ashamed of having spoken as they had in front of a third person. 2. Fred knew that the girl's father was a draper and had four assistants. «He must (to do) well,» he said to her. «He doesn't complain,» said the girl. 3. The night porter was very good-looking and it must (to take) him a half-hour to comb his hair into such shining black perfection. 4. «You must (to be) right,» I said. 5. They must (to hear) that the fellow was in London. 6. But at last he rose realizing dully that he had work which he must (to do). 7. He had a faint feeling of satisfaction in the thought that Mait must (to wonder) why they had gone off together. 8. I must (to sit) there for a quarter of an hour waiting and thinking about it before I saw the letter. 9. «His relatives do not think so.» «Then they must (to be) a lot of damned fools.» 10. Mrs.Cromwell took us round the yacht. There was no doubt that it must (to cost) her a lot of money. 11. He had said that he himself was an admirer of Stendahl. This must (to influence) him in making his decision. 12. At half -past two I heard Hudson grunt, put down his book and switch out the light. He must (to read) since midnight. 13. «I must (to get) old,» she said, «to be talking like that.» 14. There were a lot of mirrors that must (to buy) at the sale of some old restaurant. 15. When I jumped up the thing fell off my knee. It must (to lie) there yet.

Ex. 18. Translate the following sentences Into English using 'must' in all of its meanings:

1. Я должен работать изо всех сил эту неделю. 2. Милли ведь видела их. Она, должно быть, сказала вам об этом. 3. Он должен попасть туда до 8 -ми часов. 4. Она разожгла камин и сказала: «Ну, садись же. Ты, наверное, закончил». 5. Я должна еще перемыть все стаканы. 6. Джон, повернувшись от двери, заметил, что стоит на письме, которое лежало на половике. Его, должно быть, доставили спустя некоторое время после его возвращения. 7. «Мы будем рано пить чай, - сказала Кэт. - Ты, наверное, умираешь от голода». 8. «А, это ты!» - сказал он, взглянув с удивлением. Он, должно быть, забыл, как меня зовут. 9. Я не видел Джима, но я знал, что он, вероятно, ждет меня где -то здесь. 10. Я подождал с полчаса, и когда я уже думал, что что-то, должно быть, случилось с Китти, она приехала на такси. (11.Она такая бледная. Очевидно, она была больна. 12. Я должен написать им сегодня же. 13. Я должен для него что-нибудь сделать, - подумал Джек. 14. Филипп, в твоей книжке было какое -то письмо. - Разве? - Ты, наверное, забыл его.

Ex. 19. Remembering that 'must' in the meaning of probability is not used either with reference to the future or in the negative form, find a suitable way of translating the following sentences into English:

1. Я не хочу сдавать экзамены. Так или иначе, меня, вероятно, не будет в Лондоне в это время. 2. Очевидно, в его распоряжении никогда раньше не было так много денег. 3. Мартин находился по другую сторону камина. Я подумал, что он, должно быть, не слышал их слов. 4. Он, должно быть, не сумел уговорить его поехать с нами. 5. У него, очевидно, пока просто не нашлось времени для вас. 6. Они, должно быть, не встретили его на станции. 7. Я терпел это так долго, потому что думал, что она меня по-своему любит. Но, конечно, она, должно быть, никогда не любила меня. 8. Преподаватель, видимо, по ошибке не упомянул твоей фамилии. 9. Она, должно быть, не знает, что вы здесь. 10. Мы, вероятно, не видели ее с лета. 11.. Могу я поговорить с тобой завтра утром? - Я, наверное, буду занят утром. 12. Он, вероятно, не захочет говорить по -английски. 13. Дома, должно быть, нет никого сейчас. 14. Кто этот старик? - Новый президент компании. - Не шути со мной. - Я не шучу. Ты, должно быть, не читал газет.

Ex. 20. Revision: re -word the following sentences' using 'can', 'may' or 'must' in them:

1. I don't think he did it all by himself. 2. Perhaps you're right. 3. It is possible that they forgot it in the car. 4. Is it really true? 5. I don't believe he has been meaning to do it. 6. It is impossible that he should have refused your request. 7. Evidently he has not read the book. 8. I wonder where it is that you met him. 9. I'm certain that he has heard the gong. 10. It was some special occasion, I'm sure. 11. He looks wet and muddy. I'm sure he has been fishing. 12. No doubt, she is out shopping. 13. I wonder what it is that you have brought in that box. 14. It's possible that he doesn't know we are here. 15. Is it possible that he is giving a course on the Renaissance at the University? 16. It is possible that the news is being broadcast on all the channels. 17. I'm certain they didn't take notes of the meeting. 18. Is it possible that we are out of wrapping paper? 19. It is possible he will again forget to rule a margin down the left side. 20. «I don't now see him driving his car. Is it possible that something has happened?» «Evidently his car is undergoing repairs.»

Ex. 21. Revision: translate the following sentences into English using 'can', 'may' or 'must' wherever possible:

1. Они должны делать, как им сказано. 2. Я полагаю, что я должна надеть другие туфли на вечер. 3. Я не могу уйти, не расплатившись. 4. Они должны вернуть все деньги. 5. Ты мог бы им позвонить и сказать, что не придешь. 6. Я так хотел есть, что чуть не съел все сразу. 7. Мне взять зонт? - Да, похоже, что будет дождь. 8. Ты с мог закончить работу? 9. Ситуация так плоха, что дальше некуда. 10. Ты не мог бы прийти немного попозже? 11. Неужели ты сам это написал? 12. Это просто не может случиться со мной. 13. Я перебрал в уме все возможные случаи, когда бы это я мог с ним познакомиться. 14. Может быть, он не захотел выступить. 15. Она никогда не рассказывала о своем детстве, и этому, должно быть, была какая -то причина. 16. Но я просто не могу идти дальше. 17. «Он

может отдохнуть в моем кабинете», - сказал м -р Болт. 18. Нора отвела сына в свою комнату. Мне было слышно, как они там разговаривали. 19. «Не нужно преуменьшать опасность», - сказал он. 20. Я смогу написать им завтра. 21. Никто не смог бы сделать больше, чем сделал ты. 22. Ник был таким сыном, которым любой родитель мог бы гордиться. 23. Я думаю, что он влюбился в вас потому, что никогда, должно быть, еще не встречал никого похожего на вас. 24. Я думаю, что не буду никуда выходить сегодня. Я, пожалуй, лучше посижу в комфорте у камина в такую погоду. 25. Право же, ты что-нибудь мог бы сделать относительно этого. 26. В конце концов, нельзя не восхищаться человеком с такими высокими принципами. 27. Ты можешь делать, что хочешь. 28. «Я не вижу, что еще я мог бы тогда сделать», - сказал он. 29. Его мать опять в больнице. Она, должно быть, серьезно больна. 30. Среди них не было никого, к кому бы я мог обратиться за помощью. 31. Я не понимаю, как ты мог держать себя так глупо. 32. Я поневоле подумал, что мисс Грей выдала себя этими словами. 33. Он двигался так тихо, что не мог бы побеспокоить сон самого чуткого человека. 34. Где мои очки? Нет, их здесь нет. Я, должно быть, оставил их дома. 35. Я должен оставаться здесь весь день? 36. Он спросил, может ли он положиться на меня. 37. Он спросил, не могу ли я позаниматься с его классом на следующем уроке. 38. Когда ребенок так болен, вы, должно быть, чувствуете себя ужасно. 39. Вы должны найти его и привезти сюда со всеми его материалами. 40. «Это, наверное, совсем не похоже на ваш дом», - сказал Барт.

Ex. 22. Revision: fill in the blanks with 'can', 'may' or 'must':

1. «Will you know where to go?» «Yes, thank you. I ... always ask my brother.» 2. «Didn't she hear our shouting?» «She says she heard nothing.» «She ... have wandered a long way.» 3. What ... he have meant when he said it? 4. He hesitated and said, «I ... go to South America. As a tea planter.» I said, «I ... be wrong, Jason, but I don't think they grow tea in South America.» 5. He ... have flown off after he dropped us. He ... not land here. Not in a plane with wheels. 6. «I'd give anything to meet that fellow.» «We ... see what ... be done.» 7. Cindy ... have laughed aloud. Instead, she nodded. 8. You ... hardly have been more surprised than I was. 9. The old man cupped his ear in his palm. «I think I ... be getting deaf. I ... not hear you.» 10. «There was someone on the phone for you,» he said. «Oh, who?» «I don't know, he didn't say. Some man.» «It ... have been Mike.» «I know Mike. It wasn't Mike.» «Oh. Then I ... not think who it ... have been.» 11. Mr. Fox ... not come. He sent me to represent him. 12. I went straight from the station to the club and played billiards. It ... have been after eleven when I reached the flat. 13. Oh, you ... drink things steaming! ... you eat eggs with the shells on, too? 14. She was beginning to want to ask him in but she knew that she ... not do it yet. 15. It's a most interesting story. He ... not possibly have invented it. You ... have told him something. 16. I've other things to attend to which ... be put through immediately. 17. I admire your mother's looks. She ... have been a lovely girl. 18. The apples are very good. You ... eat them all. 19. My wife . . . leave the hospital in a week's time. 20. My wife ... to leave the hospital a few days ago. 21. I'm trying to think where he ... have gone. 22. Of course it occurred to me that if he had found the watch as he said, it ... have been lying in the garden for more than a year. 23. He began absently to eat one of the buttered biscuits. He'd lose his appetite if his wife didn't

hurry up. She ... be talking to Frau Schmidt. 24. A day or two later Mrs. Strickland sent me a note asking if I ... go and see her that evening after dinner. 25. «I don't know why he did it.» «It ... have amused him.» 26. «You know, I'm a bit of a writer myself in a small way.» «What are you writing? A novel?» «Oh, come off it. I ... not write a novel. No, it's a sort of history of the regiment, as a matter of fact.» 27. «He's up in Barbie's room. He's decorating it with shells. He ... have brought in a ton.» 28. «She's gone out. Something awful ... have happened.» «How ... she have got out? The door is locked.» 29. I'm going to tell him that he ... not do any building here. 30. They say the driver ... have been going fifty miles round that blind corner, for the body to have been thrown and injured like it was.

Ex. 23. Explain the meanings and forms of 'have to' and 'be to' in the following sentences:

1. I had to have someone to show me the way from the station. 2. We were to act as guides to the party. 3. «Guess what!» «I can't guess. You'll have to tell me.» 4. Now will you please show me the room where I am to work. 5. Now I've had to listen to a lot of lying. And I never watch faces. I look at hands and listen very carefully to the tone and tempo of speech. 6. The children are not to touch anything in the room. 7. There was a special order that no one was to come to the station to see the battalion off. 8. But I've been having to give a lot of thought recently to my feelings toward you. 9. It was the first and the last ceremony I was to see. 10. «What do you have to do to earn so much money?» Barber asked. 11. He was to have had a music lesson in the morning but the teacher called up to cancel it. 12. I didn't have to turn around to know they were coming down the street. 13. He looked about him for his daughter but she was not to be seen. 14. I was having to feel my way.

Ex. 24. Turn the following affirmative sentences containing 'have to' into negative and interrogative ones:

1. He has to light a fire. 2. They had to change their shoes. 3. I shall have to buy a new pair of gloves. 4. She has to go home early. 5. He had to give it back. 6. She'll have to come again.

Ex. 25. Translate the following sentences into English using 'have to' or 'be to':

1. Барт должен был увидаться со своим шурином за ланчем на следующий день, но он не видел причины рассказывать об этом жене. 2. Ей пришлось выпить чай без сахара. 3. Я знал, что Пэт должна была прийти в клуб. 4. Я был несколько удивлен, обнаружив так много народа в зале, где я должен был выступать. 5. Мне нет необходимости быть там раньше трех часов. 6. Руди пригласили на обед домой к Мэри. После обеда они должны были пойти в кино. 7. Один из гостей сел около меня. Мне не нужно было говорить, кто он. 8. Они бомбили нас весь день вчера, и мы вынуждены были оставаться в окопах. 9. У тебя короткие волосы и они вьются. - Я болела скарлатиной, и волосы пришлось обрезать. 10. «Я ведь никогда не говорил тебе, что учился в частной школе?» - спросил Алек. «В этом не было необходимости». 11. На следующий день Франк взял меня на долгую автомобильную прогулку. А в семь часов мы должны были обедать с Гринами. 12. По радио объявили, что вечером должен выступать президент. 13.

Он должен был пододвинуться поближе, чтобы услышать ее. 14. В этот час Филиппа никогда не было видно. 15. Нам пришлось согнуть цветок, чтобы он поместился в коробке.

Ex. 26. Fill in the blanks with 'have to' or 'be to':

1. At nightfall the ship put in at a small port where they ... to load three hundred bags of coffee. 2. They ... to light a fire to cook their supper. 3. He set off for the school where he ... to write examinations for entry to the University. 4. When I got home I found I had left my olive oil in front of the notice-board and I ... to return in the afternoon to collect it. 5. He made all arrangements for the marriage, which ... to take place on the day of his mother's arrival. 6. The Finnish woman who ... to work for Finch had not arrived yet. 7. She knew there would be no more vacations for her sons. But she ... (not) to say it. They knew that as well as she. 8. Eden went to the wood where he ... to meet his brother for a ride. 9. Uncle Nick's things ... to be moved out of his room so that it could be re-let. 10. For the next few weeks I ... to stay in bed. Everyone came to visit me, and brought me presents, and I ... (not) to do the cooking. 11. Early in January Maurice returned to Ireland and his brother accompanied him. He ... to remain with him till spring. He then ... to go to the Slade School of Fine Arts in London. 12. They went to inspect Finch's new house. Finch said that only the last touches ... to be added there and he ... to move into it quite soon.

Ex. 27. Revision: fill in the blanks with 'must', 'have to' or 'be to' to suit the motives expressed in the following sentences:

1. «It is eight o'clock. The children ... go to bed,» Mr. Hudson said to the nurse. 2. She ... go to bed at eight o'clock to be up in time for the first train. 3. At this boarding school the children ... go to bed at eight o'clock. 4. «I've told my husband he ... (not) smoke in the drawing-room.» «And I ... (not) tell my husband such things; he's a born gentleman.» 5. He ... stay the night with us. I won't let him drive to the country in this rain. 6. He ... stay the night with us because he has missed the last bus. 7. He ... stay the night with us and tomorrow he sets off on his tour to Europe. 8. We ... begin as early as possible or we shan't finish it today. 9. I ... start on my new job on Monday. 10. You ... take the dog away. I won't have it here any longer. 11. They ... take the dog along with them because there is no one who could look after it. 12. She ... learn to do things for herself. I refuse to help her in future. 13. What a pity you ... go. I know it's time for you to catch your train. 14. I ... be off. I want to go to bed. 15. You ... do your chores now, and she ... do hers when she comes in. 16. My mother says that I ... (not) be out after eleven o'clock, but I ... (not) hurry home because she herself is out playing bridge. 17. My bike is under repair and I ... walk here this morning. 18. My bike was under repair and I ... collect it that afternoon. 19. My bike is under repair and I ... have collected it yesterday. 20. He told me that I ... (not) repeat what I had heard.

Ex. 28. Explain the meanings of 'ought to', 'shall' and 'should' in the following sentences:

1. I think I ought to let your parents know we are here. 2. You should have gone to the concert. Why should you miss the music? 3. I think I ought to put all my cards on the table. 4. It's late. You should go to bed. 5. Oughtn't you to be more careful? 6. «How

can you know what his feelings are?» «I ought to know, for he's always telling me about them.» 7. It was surprising that they should have met at all. 8. He remembered that he should not smoke unless invited to do so. 9. When Charles saw Ann playing tennis, he came up and said: «Are you sure you ought to be doing that?» 10. Shall I get you some fresh coffee, Ed? 11. The responsibility is entirely mine. I acted very wrongly indeed. I ought not to have let this relationship start. 12. «When is he going back?» «How should I know?» 13. Mrs. Murrey will be moving into the new house next month. It ought to be less bleak for her. 14. You shall have no cause to complain of me, dear. There shall be no difficulty about money. 15. «Meg is in town shopping.» «Who took her in?» «Renny drove her to the train. He should be back at any moment.»

Ex. 29. Use the required form of the infinitive after 'ought to' and 'should':

1. «But we ought (to have) your brother here, to tell us exactly how far we can go. 2. Tea is between half -past five and six, and it should (to be) ready now. 3. He couldn't see anything. He thought that he ought (to bring) a torch. 4. Should the baby (to play) with a box of matches? 5. If you're in love it ought (to make) you happy. You ought (to laugh). 6. The doctor said it was appendicitis and she ought (to operate) on. 7. You should (to see) him yesterday on horseback. 8. One day the headmaster came on Jack, who should (to sweat) on the sports ground, sitting comfortably in a gardener's shed reading a book and eating a large piece of cocoanut ice. 9. «Your father and I should (to arrange) everything before I came here,» he said. 10. Oughtn't you (to answer) that letter now? 11. Where is his car? He shouldn't (to leave) it unattended. 12. He drove at great speed. He knew that about this hour the guests should (to arrive) at his house. 13. «Well, I'm very glad to know at last what it was all -about.» «You ought (to tell) before.» 14. Then he should (to laugh), but instead he heard himself saying: «Everything you say is quite true.» 15. Anything we can do to clear up this miserable affair ought (to do).

Ex. 30. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences choosing between 'ought to' and 'should':

Note: Remember that although 'ought to' and 'should' are very close in the meaning of obligation and are often interchangeable, the former tends to express moral obligation and is not frequent in negative sentences whereas the latter is common in instructions and corrections.

1. He looked more than ever out of place; he ... have stayed at home. 2. I don't think people ... gossip like that about other people. 3. She said, «You know, I think I ... get across to the station and see what goes on.» 4. I want him to do what's right. It ... (not) be necessary to persuade a man to do that. 5. My mother frowned at him and shook her head in away that meant that he ... (not) say things like that in front of me. 6. «Strange,» said the boy, «how, when people are either very old or very young, they are always wanting to do something they ... (not) do.» 7. «It is very wicked of you,» she said. «You ... be ashamed of yourself.» 8. After she had gone I found myself wondering whether I ... do anything for her. 9. I'll see and speak to Maurice. He ... (not) behave like that. 10. I expect you to tell me the way to do it. You ... know. 11. She is a clever girl and her French ... be perfect. 12. The children were out dancing when they ... have been learning their lessons. 13. I realize now I ... (not) have said anything. 14. «I'm not

very fit. I'm having trouble with my leg.» «I see. Well, I think you ... go and see a doctor I know.» 15. Anne was quite capable of coming down to make herself a cup of cocoa when she ... be asleep.

Ex. 31. Translate the following sentences into English using 'ought to' and 'should' wherever possible:

1. Я прошу извинения. Мне не следовало этого говорить. 2. Мне думается, вам надо бы проявить хоть какое -то уважение к старшим. 3. Я подумал, что тебе нужно бы знать об этом. 4. Теперь я расстроил ее. Мне не нужно было этого говорить. 5. «Я сказал что-нибудь такое, чего мне не следовало говорить?» - спросил он у матери. 6. Не стоит задавать таких вопросов. 7. Ну, что же, вы были правы. Мне не так надо было делать это. 8. Как ты думаешь, чем мне следовало бы заняться? 9. Я был с тобой более откровенен, чем мне следовало бы. 10. Я сказал, что ей совсем не следовало бы приходить с ним. 11. Не стоит быть столь критичным в твоём возрасте, Фрэнк. 12. Энн моя сестра. - Мне следовало бы догадаться. Вы похожи на нее.

Ex. 32. Translate the following sentences into English using 'shall' wherever possible:

1. Сколько мне заплатить носильщику? 2. Когда мы узнаем что-нибудь, вы непременно услышите об этом. 3. Вы отпустите меня домой? - Нет. Ты во вторник отправишься пароходом в Сан -Франциско. 4. Это можно сделать и это будет сделано, если ты только поможешь мне. 5. «Тебе поиграть?» - спросила она. - «Да, пожалуйста». 6. Когда он говорит: «Сделай», я отвечаю: «Будет сделано».

Ex. 33. Explain in which syntactic conditions the emotional 'should' is used in the following sentences and translate these sentences into Russian trying to convey the emotional coloring expressed by 'should':

Note: It is advisable to pick out those sentences where the use of the Indicative forms is possible and re -word them accordingly.

1. There was no reason why I should not get away promptly in the afternoon. 2. Kate was frowning. «I can't understand why you should do this.» 3. It was singular that Horn should ask him that question. 4. «It's very disappointing,» he said, «that Hugh should go off like this just when I counted on him to help me.» 5. Why should he think that? 6. I am very shocked indeed that you should have felt it necessary to lie to me. 7. That he should hear of the exposure of his favorite author with approval showed that something radical had changed his point of view. 8. He was very sorry that Philip should be disturbed. 9. He was one of themselves now and they didn't see why he should put on airs. 10. There is no reason why he shouldn't win two or three matches. 11. I'm sorry that you should have had a row with Pat about it. 12. It was much better that he should learn the business thoroughly, and if they had been able to wait for a year there seemed no reason why they should not wait another. 13. He seemed to see nothing exceptional in the idea that he should get up and speak at the meeting. 14. «Where is Meg?» «Where should she be if not in school?» 15. Why should you tell

people the disagreeable things that are said about them?

Ex. 34. Translate the following sentences into English using the emotional 'should':

Note: It is advisable to pick out those sentences where the Indicative forms are possible and give two variants with them.

1. Вот я и подумал, что ведь это абсурд, что мы живем рядом и не разговариваем. 2. Как странно, что он ничего не сказал об этом. 3. Было невероятно, чтобы Джон оказался так занят, что у него всю неделю не было времени повидать ее. 4. Не было никакой причины, почему бы им не быть там. 5. Как его зовут? - А зачем я буду тебе говорить? 6. Мне жаль, что ты так плохо обо мне думаешь. 7. Не знаю, почему это он хочет увидеть Джорджа. 8. Было странно, что в ее возрасте она была так безразлична к вечеринкам. 9. Наконец он решил вернуться домой. Возможно, что там он услышит новости о Мэри. 10. Ведь нет возражений, чтобы я его повидал? - А по чему бы им быть? И. Мне очень жаль, что мой брат ответственен за это. 12. Как случилось, что ты привел его с собой? И чего это он захотел прийти сюда? 13. Он был очень доволен, что Кэт все же назвала ребенка в его честь. 14. Что могло с ним случиться? Представить себе не могу, почему он так опаздывает. 15. Забавно, что ее инстинкт оказался прав. 16. Нелепо, что она выбрала этого человека себе в мужья. 17. Меня рассердило, что он оказался таким слабовольным. 18. Ему, казалось, было честно, что кто-то захотел почитать что-нибудь, написанное им. 19. Все же Розмари не понимала, почему она должна уйти. 20. Она начала рассказывать мужу о Теде, но вскоре остановилась и сказала: «Я просто не знаю, почему я надоедаю тебе этими рассказами о Теде».

Ex. 35. Revision: translate the following sentences into English using 'can', 'may', 'must', 'have to', 'be to', 'ought to', 'shall' or 'should':

1. Тебе надо было бы еще раз прочитать свое сочинение. Там, должно быть, есть ошибки. 2. Неужели сейчас только шесть часов? 3. Зря ты так разговаривал с ним. Он мог обидеться. 4. Уж он -то должен это знать. 5. Мне сейчас позвонить ему? 6. У него, должно быть, есть чувство юмора. Иначе он не мог бы так сказать. 7. Завтра день рождения твоей сестры. Я думаю, что ты должен подарить ей что-нибудь. 8. Должно быть, идет сильный дождь. На улице никого нет. 9. Не может быть, чтобы он забыл о своем обещании. 10. Напрасно ты не послал им телеграмму. Теперь они могли бы уже приехать. 11. Простите, что я опоздал. Вам долго пришлось ждать меня? 12. Я никуда не выходил в тот вечер, так как после работы ко мне должен был зайти Джордж. 13. Он должен был вернуться в гостиницу, так как вылет его самолета задерживался. 14. Он знал, что ему предстояло быть на двух совещаниях на следующей неделе. 15. Она ничего не должна знать о твоих делах. 16. Она, должно быть, ничего не знает о его делах. 17. Этот экзамен я должен буду сдавать через неделю. 18. Тебе надо будет еще раз позвонить им? 19. Тебе не надо идти сегодня в магазин, так как мы обедаем в гостях. 20. О чем они разговаривают? - Они, может быть, спорят о сценарии. 21. Новость может напугать ее. 22. Она знала, что должна все объяснить им. 23. Тебе надо самому зарабатывать на жизнь. 24. Их дом должны

были снести, и ему пришлось переехать в новый жилой район. 25. Я надеюсь, твоей жене не приходится убирать этот огромный дом. 26. Погода хорошая, и мы могли бы прокатиться за город. 27. Мне очень жаль, но я должен идти. Я должен встретить Бетти у кино. Уже без четверти семь! Она, должно быть, уже ждет меня. Мне придется сесть на автобус. 28. Не мог бы ты сделать это сегодня? 29. Мне можно идти? 30. Зачем мне идти туда пешком?

Ex. 36. Explain the meanings of 'will' and 'would' in the following sentences and say in which cases they may be used in a parallel way:

1. Old Lady Bland argued with him, but he would not listen to reason. 2. Each time we went out together he would show me something new, something interesting. 3. I will say it again and again. 4. He had a wound that wouldn't heal. 5. Bring him back, if he'll come. 6. All that I would tell them was that Uncle Nick was ill. 7. She was the sort of girl any man might be glad to bring to a dance if she would come. 8. I know there is a theory that a book, if it is any good, will always find a publisher. 9. Will you come round tomorrow? 10. The toilet in this room won't stop running. 11. When he returned I repeated my offer of food, but he would take nothing. 12. «What time is it?» «Half past twelve.» «Well, the last bus will have left.» 13. Often, after dinner, he will settle down in an armchair to read the paper. 14. Would you really do it for me? 15. He would smoke a pipe before going to bed.

Ex. 37. Translate the following sentences into English using 'will' or 'would':

1. Ну, пожалуйста, расскажи мне, что случилось. 2. Джон попытался открыть крышку, но она никак не поддавалась. 3. Я бы все сделал, чтобы помочь ему. 4. Он сказал, что он был бы рад, если бы я согласился приехать и погостить у него несколько дней. 5. Он попытался объяснить, но я не стал его слушать. 6. Он не согласился со мной. - Естественно. 7. Сегодня воскресенье, и все магазины будут закрыты. 8. Он сделал две или три попытки зажечь зажигалку, но она никак не зажигалась. 9. Я спросил его жену, что с ним, но она мне не ответила. 10. Вечера он по большей части проводил за игрой в шахматы. 11. Я заплатил деньги, и я хочу посмотреть представление. 12. Он выключил лампу, но сон к нему не шел. 13. Я думаю, что я пойду и посмотрю телевизор, если вы извините меня. 14. Я хотел посмотреть только одну картину, но они меня не пустили, так как было поздно. 15. «Дядя Эдвин, - позвал мальчик. - Ты обещал мне помочь с моим игрушечным поездом. Он никак не двигается».

Ex. 38. Revision: translate the following sentences into English using 'had better', 'would rather (sooner)', 'will not have' or 'would like':

1. Когда мы сели в машину, он сказал: «Мы могли бы прокатиться сейчас. Здесь недалеко есть одно место, которое я бы хотел тебе показать». 2. Ты должен сдерживаться. Я не позволю тебе так вести себя в моем доме. 3. Хотите еще стакан сока? 4. Я бы предпочел не говорить тебе того, что я о нем знаю. 5. Мне совсем не хотелось идти на этот вечер. Я бы предпочел остаться дома и поболтать с родителями. 6. Он предпочитал слушать других и не говорить сам. 7. Они знают, что я не допущу этого в своей квартире. 8. «Мне бы лучше совсем не приезжать домой», - сказала она голосом, дрожащим от отчаяния. 9. Отец не

допустит, чтобы ты так разговаривал со мной. 10. Пойдемка сразу домой, чтобы ты могла прилечь. 11. Он бы предпочел не уезжать еще. 12. Теперь я решил, что лучше всего сделать. 13. Она бы предпочла сначала прочесть письмо.

Ex. 39. Explain the meaning of 'need' in the following sentences and translate them into Russian:

1. «Why don't you go and look at the snake?» her mother suggested. «You needn't go up close.» 2. It's not easy to hold responsibility. I needn't tell you that. 3. Angela opened the door and walked in. Her daughter was still up. «You needn't have stayed up, waiting for me,» said Angela. 4. If you don't like the cocktail, you needn't drink it. 5. «Do you remember what you did when you were twenty-five?» «You need not have reminded me of it.» 6. Need we insist upon the date? 7. You needn't worry. 8. Need you bring your girl -friend with you? 9. She said that if he didn't like to come to her parties he needn't come at all. 10. I was rather afraid that he might act as though we were intimate friends, which would have been embarrassing. But I need not have worried. 11. Does he need to study more at home?

Ex. 40. Translate the following sentences into English using 'need':

1. То, что она сделала, так глупо, что нам незачем обсуждать это. 2. Это было так близко, что даже Алан, который не любил ходить пешком, согласился, что им не нужно брать его машину. 3. Нам не к чему варить всю картошку. 4. Нам нужно переодеться к обеду? 5. У нас еще масса времени. Мы зря спешили. 6. А нам обязательно туда идти? 7. Тебе незачем тратить на них все деньги. 8. Я сказал твоему дяде, что поговорю с тобой. - Ты напрасно беспокоился. Я пообещал своим родителям побыть здесь еще немного. 9. Он положил конверт на стол. «Деньги все там, - сказал он. - Можешь не пересчитывать их». 10. Ты знаешь детей. Они все ломают. Мне нет нужды говорить тебе об этом. 11. Он знал, что ему не надо никому ничего объяснять. 12. Я думаю, что нам незачем уделять ей столько внимания. 13. Тебе незачем бояться меня. 14. Нам не обязательно слушать всех ораторов.

Ex. 41. Explain the meaning of 'dare' in the following sentences and translate them into Russian:

1. He felt he dare not reply. 2. Her face bore an expression of such ferocity that no one dared come near to speak with her. 3. I dare say you're a little tired after your walk, dear. 4. He dared not look into her face. 5. I did not dare to ask him to call off his trip. 6. She was aware that they were too intent upon their business to think that anyone was watching them, but she dared not move. 7. Who dares to jump over the stream? 8. She did not dare to leave the house in case he telephoned.

Ex. 42. Revision: translate the following sentences into English using 'shouldn't', 'oughtn't to' or 'needn't' followed by a perfect infinitive:

1. Тебе не следовало уступать ее капризам. 2. Тебе не надо было приводить своего приятеля сегодня. Я плохо себя чувствую. 3. Мне не следовало говорить им этого. 4. Ты зря заказал номер в гостинице. У нас есть свободная спальня. 5. Тебе не следовало жениться так рано. 6. Ты зря написал ему об этом. Он теперь

будет беспокоиться. 7. Ты зря приехал в Лондон. Здесь его нет. 8. Ты зря купил эту машину. Она очень дорогая. 9. Ты зря приехал на машине. Здесь нет моста через реку. 10. Зря ты был с нею так груб. Она теперь плачет.

Ex. 43. Revision: translate the following sentences expressing absence of necessity into Russian using 'have to' or 'need':

1. Рассказать тебе, как все это случилось? - Не надо. Я все знаю. 2. Погода сейчас теплая, и мне не надо топить камин вечером. 3. Он четко осознавал, что он хочет сказать, и ему не надо было подбирать слова. 4. Мне не надо было ничего покупать, так как мой муж не обедал дома в тот день. 5. У него сейчас каникулы. Ему не надо работать до осени. 6. Скажи моему сыну, что ему не надо работать до осени. Ему надо хорошо отдохнуть дома. 7. Она знала, что ей не надо присутствовать при их разговоре. 8. У него не было необходимости жить летом в Лондоне.

Ex. 44. Revision: supply the necessary modal verbs for the following sentences, noticing carefully the Russian equivalents given in brackets:

1. He ... not and ... not believe her. (не мог, не хотел) 2. He sat, thinking unhappily of his talk with Jimmy. He wondered if he ... have stayed with him. He felt he ... have said something at least, to warn Jimmy against Smith. But what ... he have said? And Jimmy ... not have listened, (надо было бы, следовало бы, мог бы, не стал бы) 3. «By the way,» I asked, «what's Bill doing now?» «How in the world... I know?» Arthur looked pained. «I thought he ... have been bothering you for money.» (откуда мне знать, может быть) 4. He came out of the water, smiling. «You ... have come earlier,» he said. «We ... have swum together. The water is great.» (зря не пришел, могли бы) 5. «Last night, you know, Hugh suddenly began to speak to me about what my future was going to be like.» «What ... it have meant?» «How ... I know?» (и что это могло значить, откуда мне знать) 6. There was an old apple tree beside the path. I said, «I bet I ... climb that.» «No, you... not,» said Jack, (могу, не надо) 7. «Well, then, ... you hold the line while I find the letter?» «I ... not, I'm in a telephone box.» «Then ...I ring you back?» «I'm not on the telephone.» «Then I think perhaps you ... ring me back in half an hour. By then I ... have some idea what this is all about.» (можешь ли, не могу, можно мне, тебе лучше, может быть) 8. He knows he ... read classics. He ... change to something else, (нет нужды, мог бы) 9. «Monday will be my last day in London,»Hudson said. «I stay down here fairly late.» (может быть придется) 10. In any case, I ... not hang about outside indefinitely while the sisters finished their quarrel. They ... continue for hours, (не мог же, может быть)

Ex. 45. Revision: translate the following sentences into English using suitable modal verbs:

1. Мне пойти и узнать, сделал ли он работу? Он должен был закончить ее вчера. 2. Тебе долго пришлось дожидаться его? 3. Зря ты пришел. Собрание отменено. 4. Он должен был все закончить вчера, но его неожиданно вызвали в Лондон. 5. Ты должен был бы сказать нам об этом, а то теперь мы не знаем, что нам делать. 6. Все устроилось. Теперь мне не надо ехать в Лондон. 7. Он, должно быть, не сумел передать им нашу записку, и они, возможно, ждут нас. 8. Неужели он

позабыл заказать нам номера в гостинице? - Он, наверное, заказал их на ваше имя. 9. Не может быть, чтобы она сделала такую глупость. 10. Мне можно идти? 11. Вы могли бы сделать это для меня? 12. Он должен был приехать пятичасовым поездом. Неужели он опоздал на него? - Откуда мне знать? 13. Он, наверное, не сказал им об этом, и они, возможно, не придут. 14. Ты должен был нам сказать, что не сможешь выступить за команду сегодня. 15. Зачем тебе откладывать на завтра то, что ты можешь (мог бы) сделать сегодня? 16. Я должна с ним увидеться во вторник вечером. 17. Он мог бы хоть что-нибудь сказать в мою пользу. 18. Она никак не хотела объяснить, в чем дело. 19. К сожалению, мне не пришлось поговорить с отцом. Я не застал его дома. Мне следовало бы приехать рано утром. 20. Ты мог бы мне сказать, что опоздаешь. 21. Она, должно быть, не поняла, по какой дороге ей идти, и, возможно, она заблудилась. 22. Тебе пришлось остаться там до конца, да? 23. Ты вся промокла. Зря ты не попросила кого-нибудь подвезти тебя. 24. Мне, возможно, придется поехать туда на такси. Так, наверное, будет быстрее. 25. Я везде искал его вчера. Я хотел, чтобы он тоже выступил на собрании. - Ты зря беспокоился. Он мог бы все испортить.

The Verb. Means of Expressing Unreality

Ex. 1. Explain the use of the verb forms in object clauses after the verb 'to wish' and translate the sentences into Russian:

1. I wish I had a lab of my own. 2. She almost wished she hadn't asked them to dinner. 3. I wish I could drop the whole matter. 4. I wish it had happened to anyone but you. 5. I wish you had brought your sister with you. 6. «I wish Paul could have stayed a few minutes,» I said. 7. He wished they would let him enjoy his dinner in peace. 8. Oh, how I wish it would rain! 9. I wish you wouldn't be so horrid, Willy, just when I'm so miserable.

Ex. 2. Supply the necessary forms for the verbs given in brackets in object clauses after the verb 'to wish':

1. Bill, you're up to something. I wish I (to know) what it is. 2. Mel wished he (to know) earlier what Tom had just told him. 3. He wished that it all never (to happen) at all and that things (to be) as they once had been. 4. I wish I (can) settle down to something. 5. I wish I (to have) a jeep, that Vall. 6. I wish I (to be) quite sure that she is altogether honest. 7. «I wish I (to have) a cigarette. That's more important to me just now,» said Jack. 8. We wish to goodness the thing (can) be patched up. 9. I wish you (to go) up and (to see) Willy. 10. I now began to wish that I (not to take) Monty into my confidence. 11. I wished he (not to ask) that question. 12. «Have you got my letter?» «Yes. I wish you (not to write) it.» 13. She almost wished it (to be) an ordinary day and that there (to be) no such things as holidays. 14. I wish I (can) go round the world. 15. I wish you (to ask) her a question or two about her parents.

Ex. 3. Translate the following into English using the appropriate verb forms in object clauses after the verb 'to wish':

1.. Как бы я хотел, чтобы твоя дочь была немножко похожа на тебя. 2. Я бы хотел, чтобы ты пришел к тому или иному решению. 3. Он очень желал, чтобы этот вечер уже кончился. 4. Я иногда жалею, что ты решил написать эту книгу, Хью. 5. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы у нас был настоящий сад. 6. О боже, как я жалею, что я сделал это. 7. Я бы очень хотел, чтобы Вилли изменил свое решение и не брался за немецкий язык. 8. Он просто не знал, как ему утешить свою жену. 9. Я бы хотел, чтобы ты снова начал писать стихи. 10. Я бы очень хотел, чтобы у большего числа людей у нас на работе было твое чувство юмора, Джек. 11.. Она жалела, что ей не было слышно, что они говорили внизу. 12. Я бы хотела, чтобы он перестал мне писать. 13. Как жаль, что я не застал его дома. 14. Я пожалела, что рассказала им о себе.

Ex. 4. Explain the use of the verb forms in object clauses after 'it is time' and translate the sentences into Russian:

1. Don't you think it's time you got a job? 2. Come along. It's time we had lunch. 3. It's high time we started putting our own house in order. 4. They were saying in the office that it was about time Walker retired. 5. «It's high time you were sacked, boy,» the foreman said angrily.

Ex. 5. Translate the following into English using the appropriate verb forms in object clauses after 'it is time':

1. Нам пора бы идти. 2. Ему давно пора бы объяснить, что он задумал. 3. Его давно пора проучить. 4. Когда я проснулся, я почувствовал, что мне самое время вызвать доктора. 5. В самом деле нам пора бы обедать. 6. Ему было сказано на людях, что пора бы ему научиться делать так, как ему велят. 7. Тебе бы давно пора выбросить эту старую мебель. 8. Как ты думаешь, не пора ли нам вернуться к гостям?

Ex. 6. Explain the use of the verb forms in object clauses after expressions of fear:

1. She was afraid that he had seen her. 2. He was afraid that he might be taken for a burglar. 3. He felt apprehensive of what might happen. 4. She is afraid that they may not meet her at the station. 5. I'm afraid the news has upset her awfully. 6. He seemed nervous lest he should set his son a bad example. 7. I passed the door quickly, fearful lest the nurse who sat up all night should hear me. 8. I said: «You know, doctor, I'm afraid I might tend to be a little inquisitive sometimes.»

Ex. 7. Supply the necessary forms for the verbs given in brackets in object clauses after expressions of fear:

1. «It's time you went to bed, dear.» «I'm afraid my husband (to call) me up from New York yet.» 2. I'm afraid we (to have) bad news for you. 3. She was afraid he (to leave) without seeing her. 4. When the plane touched down he began to have apprehension lest he (to miss) her in the crowd. 5. She was overcome with fear that I (to let) her down. 6. She was overcome with fear lest I (to let) her down, 7. I'm afraid you (not to have) a pleasant journey. 8. He feared lest his landlord (to betray) him to the Germans.

9. Paula, fearful that the opening door (to strike) the little girl, pulled her aside. 10. I had a feeling of terror lest he never (to be) able to play in public again.

Ex. 8. Revision: supply the necessary forms for the verbs given in brackets in the following object clauses of all kinds:

1. It was agreed that he (to start) on his new job on Monday. 2. I'm afraid I (not to make) my point clear. 3. I wish you (to have) a serious talk with Paula. 4. Then he asked if I (to be) a foreigner to these parts. 5. I suggested that she (to take) off her coat and (to move) towards the fire. 6. It was surprising that she (to make) friends with our boys. 7. It's important that I myself (to speak) with your captain. 8. I feared lest I (not to get) back in time. 9. It outraged me that he (to remind) me of my duty. 10. She was disappointed that he (not to come) to the party. 11. Do you prefer that I (to stay) here as if nothing had happened? 12. I'm afraid they (to misunderstand) my intention. 13. It's odd how little, if at all, our days (to vary) here. 14. I wish I never (to meet) you. 15. Tom seemed very worried, and insisted that we (to stop) playing and (to go) home. 16. I'm afraid I (not to sleep) well. 17. It was arranged that Mr. Dodd (to have) a room at the local pub. 18. It's about time we (to hear) from him. 19. I was determined that Charles (not to do) anything more to upset his father. 20. It's important that children (to teach) to know the right things from the very beginning. 21. I wish you (to think) of something else. 22. It surprised me that after such a journey he (to look) in first-class physical condition. 23. It's funny that you (to think) so. 24. I wish her face (not to make) up so heavily. She's not on the stage. 25. I thought that he (to change) very much. 26. It's high time Bill (to be) back home. 27. I felt puzzled why he (to be) so troubled. 28. He turned sharply to see if I (to cry) or something. 29. I wish you (to be) serious, Clare. We haven't much time before the train starts. 30. They recommended that I (to go) and (to see) him at once.

Ex. 9. Explain the use of the verb forms in the following appositive and predicative clauses:

1. He at last came to the decision what should be done about the manuscript. 2. My suspicion was that he did not know how to do it. 3. His aunt made a peremptory demand that he should send her ten pounds a month. 4. He willingly accepted his father's suggestion that he should go on a long journey to India. 5. He soon came to the conclusion that he had nothing in common with his brother. 6. The publisher sent me a letter with the request that I should write a review of the book. 7. But the most drastic demand the new owner made was that half the workmen be discharged at once. 8. When one reads Goethe's «The Sorrows of Weather» to-day one can hardly fail to ask oneself what there was in it to cause so great a sensation. I suppose that the answer is that it exactly suited what we now call the climate of opinion. 9. My only wish was that he should be altogether honest. 10. His intention was that his two sons should continue his trade.

Ex. 10. Supply the necessary forms for the verbs given in brackets In the following appositive and predicative clauses:

1. He had to satisfy the editor's requirements that a short story (not to exceed) one hundred lines. 2. The arrangement was that they (to take) the Fishers to a play and to

supper at the Savoy afterwards. 3. I got the impression that his family (to be) rather indifferent to him. 4. My desire was that he (to leave) off his work and go on a holiday. 5. She accepted Dick's suggestion that she (to dismiss) her taxi and ride back with him. 6. He conceived the idea that by copying any printed matter he (to improve) his spelling. 7. His only request was that he (to allow) to visit his son. 8. She was filled with a great desire that her husband (to see) her new dress. 9. He handed me over to his secretary with the instruction that I (to give) a room for the night. 10. The difficulty was that he (not to fit) in with the other people there. 11. I told him of the chief's request that he (to see) to the matter himself. 12. The trouble was that he (to move) out of the house. 13. They came to the agreement that they (to meet) for talks twice a year. 14. The suggestion is that I (to make) her stay with us a little longer. 15. The fact is that Mr. March (to catch) him in a lie.

Ex. 11. Explain the use of the verb forms in the following clauses of purpose:

1. «I like to be close to the stage,» said Sandy, «so that I can see the actors' faces.» 2. He asked Teddy to stop the car so that he and Julie could get out. 3. Once or twice he gave Tom considerable sums in order that he might make a fresh start. 4. She usually bore her head high so that men should not see her double chin. 5. I shall send a scout to reconnoiter so that we can find out what the enemy soldiers are doing. 6. George stood up lest anyone should see him lying there in his evening clothes. 7. She knew that Billy preferred to go and stand at the gate so that he could be the first to board the plane. 8. Mother is sending the children to have their refreshments first, so that we'll have the table to ourselves. 9. The woman, seeing the girl, moved to the other side of her son so that not even a glance should pass between them.

Ex. 12. Supply the necessary forms for the verbs given in brackets in the following clauses of purpose:

1. She stirred on her sofa, shifting her weight so that she (to look) down at the playing cat. 2». He gave Stella another glance, from the corner of his eye, so that she (not to see) he was looking at her. 3. Then she went over to the captain and leaned over him so that she (to speak) into his ear. 4. She put the coat back and placed some other clothes on it so that it (to look) as though it had not been disturbed. 5. I like to know what new books are being published so that I (to ask) for them at the public library. 6. You ought to hear it from his own lips so that you (to judge). 7. I went to the desk and asked for my key so that I (to go) straight up to my room. 8. Uncle Nick's effects had to be moved out of his room so that it (to re -let). 9. He waded out cautiously, so that he (not to trip) against a coral rock. 10. He carefully took note of the furniture in the room so that he (not to knock) against a chair or a table in the dark and (to make) a noise.

Ex. 13. Translate the following into English using the appropriate verb forms in clauses of purpose:

1. Я сообщаю тебе обо всех этих вещах, чтобы мы могли понять друг друга. 2. Он велел нам сесть на заднее сиденье машины, чтобы мы могли поговорить. 3. Он притворился, что разговаривает с кем -то, чтобы слуга не подумал, что он один в комнате. 4. Девочка не закрывала окно ни днем, ни ночью, чтобы кошка могла приходить к ней в комнату, когда той вздумается. 5. Мы пошли погулять,

чтобы я мог увидеть лес до того, как стемнеет. 6. Она снизила голос, чтобы ее мать не услышала нас. 7. Грейс предприняла необходимые меры, чтобы они могли пожениться сразу же. 8. Он отошел в сторону от театральной кассы, чтобы я мог поговорить с кассиром. 9. Позвони мне, когда ты будешь выезжать, чтобы я знал, когда ждать тебя. 10. Она дала мне ключ, чтобы я мог открыть дверь.

Ex. 14. *Re -word the following sentences turning the infinitive phrases into clauses of purpose:*

1. The nurse stepped around for the doctor to see the man's wound. 2. I want to go to London for my wife to see the play. 3. I know he'll come home for us to have dinner together. 4. Shall I ring for the maid to clear these things away? 5. He spoke loudly and clearly for all to hear. 6. I'm telling you this for you to write home about. 7. He kept the gate closed for the cows not to get into the garden. 8. She left the room for little Em to sleep quietly. 9. She rang off for her mother not to know whom she had been talking to. 10. He left a book here for me to look over. 11. He was plucking early roses for her to carry back to town. 12. She told all sorts of lies for her children not to hate their father.

Ex. 15. *Explain the, use of the verb forms in the following clauses of comparison and predicative clauses introduced by 'as if and 'as though':*

1. He was throwing his things into a suitcase as if the place were on fire. 2. She always looked as though she had been in the beauty parlor all afternoon. 3. Mary is always saying she believes in her friend, and at the same time she always behaves as if he were her enemy. 4. Our life goes on as if nothing had happened. 5. Father sounded as if he would never agree to let me go on the trip. 6. He came over to the table and stood in front of it as though it were a lectern. 7. He took off his hat and held it across his chest, almost as if he were saluting the flag. 8. Bernard sat in his chair looking as if he were going to be sick. 9. His head ached terribly. It felt as though all sorts of little savage things were beating inside it, trying to get out. 10. It seemed as though the water drew her irresistibly.

Ex. 16. *Supply the necessary forms for the verbs given in brackets in the following clauses of comparison and predicative clauses introduced by 'as if and 'as though':*

1. Her lips were parted as if she (to be) out of breath. 2. Hugh laughed awkwardly, as if he (to say) something indecent. 3. Then he rolled his eyes in his head, as if he (to do) an exercise. 4. He looked down at his feet as though he (to be) unconscious of the company. 5. Bateman felt as though someone (to give) him a violent blow. 6. She sounded as if she (to talk) to someone distasteful. 7. He leaned back as if he (not to have) a care. 8. «It sounds as though there (to be) three or four men down there,» said my father. 9. She spoke of this and that as though she (to make) conversation with a stranger. 10. He looked as if he already (to decide) on some action. 11. He went into the house by the back door and sneaked up the stairs as though he (to have) something to hide. 12. It looked as though he (to be) filled with an overwhelming joy. 13. The sky looked as though it (to be) grey for months. 14. Robert's voice sounded hoarse, as though he (to shout) into the wind for hours. 15. Her stillness and her strange words made me feel as if I still (to dream). 16. Jones greeted me as though I (to be) an old

school -friend whom he had not seen for years. 17. Her eyes were sparkling as though she (to laugh) at us. 18. She was breathing fast and deep, as though she (to run). 19. Her face was red and swollen as though she (to choke). 20. He looked as though he (not to move) since I left him the previous night.

Ex. 17. Translate the following into English using the appropriate verb forms in clauses of comparison and predicative clauses introduced by 'as if' or 'as though':

1. Он сидел за столом, словно он писал, но он не писал и не читал. 2. Он смотрел на меня так, словно он не понимал. 3. Собака приветствовала Фрэнка, как будто они не виделись год. 4. Они не разговаривали, как будто они были так счастливы быть вместе, что им было не нужно никакого разговора. 5. Он был красным и у него был такой вид, словно он вот-вот расплачется. 6. Она чувствовала себя очень усталой, как будто она была на долгой прогулке. 7. Она продолжала оглядывать комнату, как будто искала кого-то. 8. Они разговаривали друг с другом тихими голосами, как будто они были в церкви. 9. Морис сидел не шевелясь, словно он не расслышал Джека. 10. Он застегнул пальто, как будто ему было холодно. 11. О да, у меня такое чувство, как будто я знаю тебя годы. 12. У нее обычно был такой вид, словно она только что плакала. 13. Было похоже, что переговоры продлятся еще несколько дней.

Ex. 18. Explain the use of the verb forms in the following conditional sentences:

1. He walked around the city aimlessly for the rest of the morning, looking into shop windows and thinking of the things he would buy if he had money. 2. If I remind you in a month from now of things you are saying tonight you'll laugh. 3. What would have happened if you hadn't done so well yesterday? 4. If I were a playwright I'd write a nice, old-fashioned play in which the heroine is pure and beautiful and makes a man out of her husband. 5. «If I'd answered back like that at your age I'd have been well slapped,» said Mrs. Grey. 6. I said I thought it would be far more fun if your brother had come, too. 7. I remember that if I lit a cigarette in here you always opened the window. 8. If he knew he would have told me. I'm sure he knows nothing. 9. Ronny would bring lots of gifts for Martha and say to me: «I wouldn't be doing this, if Martha did not treat me well.» 10. She'll only be miserable if you insist. 11. Where would your father have got his tobacco if it hadn't been for me? 12. It was so dark that he would have lost his way if she had not taken him by the hand.

Ex. 19. Supply the necessary forms for the verbs given in brackets in the following conditional sentences:

1. If his mother (not to go) out, the boy (to turn) off the TV set and (to go) to bed. 2. I (to wait) if I (to be) you. 3. She (to fall) if he suddenly (not to put) out a hand to steady her. 4. If I (to be) a poet I (to write) a poem about nettles in a wine glass. 5. If it (to be) not for the journalists, everything (to be) perfectly easy. 6. If your father (to be) here, he (to give) you a piece of his mind. 7. I'm glad that he turned this offer down. There (to be) no turning back if he (to accept) it. 8. «She is only twenty.» «She (to know) better if she (to be) twenty-five?» 9. I do not know what (to happen) if this (to go) on much longer. 10. Don't you see that if things like that (to happen) life (to be) quite different? 11. You really (to follow) me if I (to go) away? 12. I believe you (to make)

her stay if it (to be) not so late. 13. It (to be) better if you (to take) things coolly, as I do.

Ex. 20. Explain the use of the verb forms in the following conditional sentences referring to the future and translate them into Russian:

1. Would you do it differently if you had to do it over again? 2. However, if it should be proved on him, he will have to leave my house. 3. It would be much more convenient if he were to move to a hotel. 4. I think it would be a good thing if you would come and stay at my house for a little while. 5. They are going to send me some records in case I should forget my lessons. 6. If I were to tell you of the things the girl does, you would open your eyes 7. «I don't care if the whole school knows.» «If that should happen, we shall have to send you home.» 8. The situation was embarrassing. If I went in at once it would be obvious that I had overheard the words that had just been spoken.

Ex. 21. Supply the necessary forms for the verbs given in brackets in the following conditional sentences referring to the future:

1. I (to be) grateful if you (to keep) the news to yourself. 2. I (to be) in the drawing - room in case there (to be) a telephone call for me. 3. Many people ask themselves: «What I (to do) differently if I (to have) another chance?» 4. He wondered how he (to feel) if his former wife (to come) into the room in which he happened to be. 5. I know he is itching to tell me what happened, but I (to be) darned if I (to ask) him. 6. Philip says they (to miss) me if I (to leave) before their wedding. 7. Look here, it (to be) a bore for you if we (to have) tea somewhere? 8. In case any crisis (to arise), let me know. 9. The situation has been bad lately, but everything (to calm) down if you only (to stop) making a fuss. 10. If this (to be) our last meeting for some time, I (not to like) you to remember this talk. 11. It (to be) awkward if she (to refuse) to co -operate. 12. What his mother and father (to think) if they (to hear) of what he has done? 13. If the situation (not to change) by Saturday I (to be) in trouble. 14. I (not to be) surprised if he (to offer) an important post under the next government.

Ex. 22. Supply the necessary forms for the verbs given, in brackets in the following sentences of unreal condition, taking special care of modal verbs:

1. «Are you still thinking of going on that cruise?» «It (may, be) enjoyable,» he said, «if one (to have) just the right person to go with.» 2. It (to be) fun if Roberta (to write) a book. 3. I never tried to understand my brother. If I (to try) I (may, stop) him from going away. 4. If I (to be) you, Meg, I (not to let) myself believe this hateful gossip. 5. I (to hate) myself if I (to deceive) him. 6. I suppose you (to think) it butting in if I (to come) too. 7. He said he had no pain, and if it (not to be) for the doctor, he (to get) up and (to go) home. 8. She (can, go) to Cambridge if she (to want). She had been offered a scholarship. 9. You (to be) horrified if I (to tell) you what I have had to go through. 10. If he (not to be) absorbed in his own thoughts he (may, take) notice of her remark. 11. I'm glad I wasn't at home. He (not to get) much help if he (to ask) me. 12. The house looked awful. If I (to be) given to crying I (may, cry) 14.. There is no knowing how long he (to continue) on the subject if his attention (not to distract) by a man who appeared on the deck. 15.. You don't understand, Lilly. If I (to pick) his idea to pieces

in front of you he (to die). 19. Alice thought it (may, be) nice if you (can, join) us. 16. It (to look) silly if I (to tell) them the truth. 17. If I (to be) you, I (to try) to rise above it. 18. If I (to be) there, of course, I (to do) something. 19. If it (not to be) for the children I (to leave) you tomorrow. 20. If I (to be) a painter, I (to choose) an entirely different subject every time.

Ex. 23. Turn the following pairs of sentences into a sentence of unreal condition, like in the example below:

E.g. Don't refuse her present. It will upset her dreadfully.

If you were to refuse her present it would upset her dreadfully.

1. Don't ask me. I can't tell you. 2. You haven't got to the city yet because you are not traveling alone. 3. He was not captain of the team because he was very unpopular. 4. He was not a handsome man. He was not tall enough. 5. She did not reply. That's why I couldn't hear her. 6. She didn't enjoy the game because she discovered that her opponent disliked losing. 7. I'm not going to make my suggestion. He may think I'm prying into his affairs. 8. As nobody told him anything about this affair he was not involved in it. 9. Luckily he is not going to be invited to the party. He says he doesn't know what to wear on such occasions. 10. We enjoy the spring so much because of the winter. 11. Though I feel certain that nothing is going to happen to him I shall stay in my office the whole day. 12. Darling, please show Harry the garden. Won't it be very nice? 13. It's not likely that John will turn his back to my sister but I wonder what effect it will have on her nerves.

Ex. 24. Finish off the following conditional sentences:

1. The cake wouldn't have got burnt if ... 2. You wouldn't have got into trouble if ... 3. Your dress would look nicer if 4. She would have married him if 5. I would have come earlier if 6. He would have got wet through if 7. She would fix the door knob herself if 8. He would drive straight home if 9. I would take her to the party if 10. It would be better for all of us if 11. If it hadn't been for the rain 12. If it were not for the coming wedding 13. If it hadn't been for their neighbor 14. If it hadn't been for his advice 15. If it hadn't been for his departure 16. If it were not for his family 17. If it were not for his scholarship 18. If it hadn't been for the announcement on the radio 19. If it were not for my sprained ankle 20. If it were not for the message that he received

Ex. 25. Translate the following conditional sentences into English:

1. Я бы никогда не подумал, что это возможно, если бы я не увидел этого своими глазами. 2. Я бы не стал делать этого на твоём месте. 3. В случае, если тебе придется неожиданно уехать, пришли мне записку. 4. Мне бы пьеса понравилась больше, если бы она не была такой длинной. 5. Если бы не его болезнь, семья переехала бы в город. 6. Если бы он пришел вовремя, этого могло бы не случиться. 7. Если бы пошел дождь, я бы промокла до костей, так как на мне было очень легкое платье. 8. «Ты всегда должен быть осторожен с движением здесь, - сказала няня. - Что бы сказала твоя мама, если бы тебя задавило?» 9. Куда бы ты пошел, если бы не шел дождь? 10. Посиди с ним. Если он вдруг попросит чего-нибудь, скажи мне. 11. Если бы я сказал что-нибудь подобное

твоей тетушке, она сочла бы меня за сумасшедшего. 12. Я буду у себя дома весь вечер на случай, если ты передумаешь. 13. Возможно, что он чувствовал бы и вел бы себя иначе в своей реакции на замужество дочери, если бы обстоятельства были иными. 14. Если бы ты не был так занят, мы могли бы пойти куда-нибудь пообедать. 15. Если бы я задержался еще на один момент, я не знаю, что я мог бы наговорить.

Ex. 26. Revision: supply the necessary forms for the verbs given in brackets in the following adverbial clauses:

1. If I (to realize) it was to be like this, I (not to come). 2. Now she acted as if she (not to care). 3. They drove with the windows closed so that they (not to catch) cold. 4. If he (not to tell) us that himself I never (to believe) that. 5. He walked out of the house jingling the keys in his pocket as though they (to be) coins. 6. I was waiting until you came so that we (to eat) together. 7. He talked quite naturally, without malice, as though he (not to relate) his war experiences, but his visits to foreign universities. 8. Even if I (to see) her at the party I (can, do) nothing for you. 9. She sent a message to some friends asking them to look in so that she (not to be) alone with Ed in the evening. 10. Don't you think it (to be) very much for the better if you and I both (to keep) quiet? 11. If anyone (to ask) me what his specific gift was, I (not to know) how to answer. 12. She said she (to be) pleased if my mother (to allow) me to spend the rest of the month with them. 13. The wind blew warmly as if it (to sweep) across Africa. 14. The boy hurried his meal so that he (to go) out to play. 15. Mary is staying with me. I think it (to be) a good thing if you (to come) and (to see) her.

Ex. 27. Revision: translate the following into English using the appropriate verb forms in adverbial clauses:

1. Если вдруг возникнет какая-нибудь трудность, позвони мне тотчас же. 2. Он улыбался, как будто не верил тому, что я говорил. 3. Запри дверь, чтобы нам никто не мешал. 4. Девочка сидела тихо, сложив руки на коленях, словно она смотрела телевизор. 5. Для нас было бы лучше, если бы мы никогда не встретились. 6. Он говорил о книге, как будто он ее читал. 7. Я оставил ему записку на столе, чтобы он ее увидел сразу же, как только он вернется. 8. Он не сказал ни слова, как будто он не слышал, что мы разговаривали о нем. 9. Если бы не ты, я не знаю, что бы я сделал. 10. Повесь объявление повыше, чтобы всем было видно. 11. Если бы не дедушка, мальчик был бы очень несчастлив дома. 12. Она записала название книги, чтобы я мог спросить ее в библиотеке. 13. Он сказал то, что другие тоже могли бы сказать, если бы они были откровенны. 14. Пол в комнате был такой пыльный, словно его не мели несколько дней. 15. Он был бы более счастливым человеком, если бы он остался в своей деревне. 16. Он улыбнулся и похлопал ее по плечу, словно она ребенок. 17. Он чувствовал, что если бы он отказался от этого предложения, отец рассердился бы на него. 18. Я надела шляпу, чтобы не подниматься вверх еще раз. 19. Мы успели бы на последний автобус, если бы ушли из театра на пять минут раньше. 20. Она даже намекнула, что если бы они встретились 10 лет назад, когда им было по двадцать лет, все могло бы сложиться иначе.

Ex. 28. Turn the words implying an unreal condition into an if -clause, like in the example below:

E.g. I should prefer you to put it in your own words. - I should prefer it if you put it in your own words.

1. He did not answer her. She would not have heard him. 2. I'd ask you to have dinner with me, but unfortunately I have a previous engagement. 3. Why didn't you tell me? It would have been only fair to give me a chance of judging for myself. 4. Jack would have left them, but he saw Maurice beckoning him to come over. 5. He knew his father was not among the audience. He would not have known what music to play for him. 6. You really should get a cat, Hilda. Think how happy it would be here! 7. «I wonder if Morgan has written to Peter.» «We'd have seen the letter.» 8. She would have liked to be an adventuress, but somehow she hadn't managed it. 9. A few years ago, in a storm like this, an airport would have been closed completely. 10. I tried to explain that but for me the children might have been lost.

Ex. 29. Translate the following into English using the appropriate verb forms to express an unreal action depending on an implied unreal condition:

1. Я не винил его. Я бы сделал то же самое. 2. Это вещи, которые ребенку было бы трудно понять. 3. Я не думаю, чтобы Дорис сделала это. 4. «Посмотри-ка на эту сцену, - сказала она. - Где еще в мире ты увидел бы что-нибудь подобное?» 5. Это не составило бы никакой разницы. 6. Видишь ли, мне было любопытно. - Мне бы тоже было любопытно. 7. Я не хочу идти туда. - Почему? Я бы ни за что не пропустил этот матч. Мы могли бы смотреть издали. - Маме это не понравилось бы. 8. Я думаю, что было бы разумно подождать до вечера. 9. Я бы никогда не подумал, что ты так быстро научишься водить машину. 10. Он бы еще многое сказал, но он устал.

Ex. 30. Supply the necessary forms for the verbs in brackets so that the following sentences can have a very polite form:

1. I (to think) they knew it by now. 2. «I (not to like) to go as far as that,» he replied. 3. You (to care) to sit down? 4. I (to say) he is a perfectly nice boy. 5. «Dick will be so glad to see you.» «I (to think) I was the last person Dick would wish to see.» 6. «You have a song. Sing it.» «No, I (can, not) in front of all these people.» «Why not? Come on, let's get the guitar. You (can, think) it over on the way.» 7. I (to say) he is now powerless to disapprove anything. 8. I (to think) that natural. 9. «How long will it take you to finish it off?» «I (to say) about an hour.» 10. You (to say) it was impossible to talk him into it? 11. It's no use asking me. I (can, not, tell) you anything. 12. I (to say) that he is no fool.

Ex 31. Supply the necessary forms expressing unreality for the verbs given in brackets:

1. Oh, if only you (to be) as you used to be. 2. I wish you (to turn) the radio down. 3. It's desirable that the issue (to settle) as soon as possible. 4. He asked me to stay with him in the country so that he (to read) his novel to me when it was finished. 5. She arranged that next morning the boy (to come) to the house where she had taken a room

so that they (to spend) the day together. 6. He feared that after twenty years he (to find) his sister a rather disillusioned woman. 7. His mother knew very well who the man was, but wanted to act as though she (to have) no idea of it. 8. He got his sister to make herself scarce for a few hours so that his new friend (not to know) that he did not live alone. 9. When the boys learned of Peter's diary it was inevitable that they also (to set) writing diaries of their own. 10. He insisted that people in plays (to talk) as they talked in real life. 11. I wish I (to see) more of them before the war. 12. Now if I (to get) Helen sacked, this of course (to mean) telling everybody what she did. 13. «I'm afraid I can't stay,» I said. «If I (to stay) I (to have) to tell things that they (not to like) and that (to spoil) their fun.» 14. It was agreed that Paul (to meet) his mother at the station so that he (to show) her his apartment. 15. I (not to tell) you anything even if I (can, remember) the facts. 16. It (to help) if you (to let) me know what you saw. 17. I know I've broken your life. And we (may, be) so happy. 18. He was afraid that he (to forget) the name and asked me to put it down for him. 19. There was a wonderful concert at the Victoria Hall we (can, go) to. But now we are late for anything. 20. He was not well off and he went about in dread lest he (to dismiss). 21. In the old days she (to argue), but now she only nodded sadly. 22. I wish I (to have) a lot of money. I (not to live) another day in London. 23. Of course, I told myself, he (may, detain) but surely in that case he (to telephone) to me. 24. When he rang up home, his wife was not in. Normally it (not to upset) him but today he needed her advice badly. 25. In my reply to Miss Evans I suggested that she (to arrive) at my office on Monday. 26. Edward proposed that he (to fetch) Bateman at five so that they (to drive) out together to Jackson's house. 27. It (to make) small difference to the universe if I never (to exist). 28. There were moments when she wished she never (to come) away. 29. As Paula had spent the whole day with them, he insisted that she (to go) for a walk in the park. 30. The Colonel proposed that they (to give) a dinner party to the new comers.

Ex. 32. Revision: translate the following into English using the appropriate means of expressing unreality:

1. Было решено, что дети пойдут в зоопарк сразу после завтрака. 2. Я бы хотел, чтобы ты поменьше курила! 3. Он потребовал, чтобы с ним немедленно расплатились. 4. Жаль, что я не сказала правды. 5. Необходимо, чтобы ты взял отпуск на месяц. 6. Немного найдется людей, которые отнеслись бы так спокойно ко всему этому. 7. Я пошел к себе в комнату, чтобы меня никто не беспокоил час или два. 8. Теперь он бы не сделал такой ошибки. 9. Как бы я хотел, чтобы этот семестр уже кончился. 10. Он на минуту испугался, что Фред сядет с ним рядом и продолжит разговор. 11. Если бы кто-нибудь поверил мне! 12. Я бы считал, что он, пожалуй, способен на это. 13. Ты сделаешь это? - Я бы предпочел, чтобы ты сделал это. 14. Кто-то предложил послать за доктором. 15. Нам пора бы приняться за работу. 16. Мы боялись, как бы он не заболел. 17. О ней всегда говорили так, в третьем лице, как будто ее там не было. 18. Он знал, что если бы его мать села рядом с ним и прикоснулась к его руке, все бы моментально стало хорошо. 19. Ты бы не понял моего затруднения, даже если бы я тебе рассказал о нем. 20. Он смотрел на Роберту, как будто он никогда не видел ничего похожего на нее. 21. Он оставил распоряжение, чтобы нас повезли показать город. 22. О, если бы она тогда только знала, куда написать ему! 23.

Если бы не его работа в библиотеке Британского музея, он никогда не нашел бы этой книги. 24. Он запер бумагу в стол, чтобы ее никто не увидел. 25. Если бы с ним не было Мег, он бы спросил их об отце. 26. Мне следовало бы сказать вам давным-давно, как много вы всегда значили для меня. 27. Если бы я когда-нибудь встретила его снова, я бы знала, что делать. 28. «Если бы родители не взяли меня с собой, я бы не простил им этого», - сказал мне мальчик. 29. Как жаль, что я не могу рассказать тебе об этом. 30. Он боялся, что произведет плохое впечатление.

Verbals

Ex. 1. Choose between the infinitive and the ing -form to use it as subject in the following sentences:

1. I did it because ... on living in the country would have been too much of a problem, (to go) 2. There was no ... how his father would react to the news, (to tell) 3. You know, her ... cleverer than her husband was half the trouble, (to be) 4. Not ... home, in fact, seemed lately to become the pattern of his life, (to go) 5. I belonged to neither groups, and ... was to take sides, (to speak) 6. There is no ... how long he would have continued on the subject if his attention had not been distracted by a man who appeared on the deck, (to know) 7. ... her upset would have been an understatement, she was beside herself with anger, (to call) 8. There was no ... the sound, (to mistake) 9. We were in the offices, and ... to his room meant going right through the place, (to get) 10. Just ... silent together like that helps, (to be) 11. Just ... my trouble would have been in bad taste, (to mention) 12. Let us admit that ... with us is the thing that we cannot do without, (to read) 13.... away for a weekend demanded a degree of will and organization, (to get) 14. She felt exhilarated, there was no ... it. (to deny) 15. Though it was fine, ... outside at a small table, eating, was not a tempting prospect, (to sit)

Ex. 2. State the doer of the actions expressed by the infinitives and ing -forms used as subject in the following sentences:

1. Your coming has done him good. 2. To understand all is to forgive all. 3. For a woman, being needed is everything in life. 4. I have no idea what we ordered, but ordering gave me time to work out my next move. 5. Not having a newspaper in his hands made the long ride much more boring. 6. For Tom to win was going to be a difficult thing. 7. Losing his twin sister at the age of fourteen probably affected him for life. 8. To know him was one of the two greatest gifts of my life. 9. Not telling my sister about it hurts me. 10. Keeping off the subject proved too great a strain for Winifred herself. 11. Making a literary reputation has never been easy. 12. Seeing him makes me glad I left the army.

Ex. 3. Choose between the infinitive and the ing -form to use it as predicative in the following sentences:

Note: Point out the instances when the particle 'to' can be omitted before the infinitive.
1. «My job is ... everyone alike, and be courteous, even when passengers are not,» said

the stewardess, (to treat) 2. But the difficulty was ... an excuse for absence from home, (to find). 3. The place was cheerful and he felt relaxed. It was like ... warm in bed. (to be) 4. My idea was ... a fuller explanation of what they plan to discuss, (to demand) 5. All you can do is (to obey) 6. His request meant ... further than I was prepared to go. (to go) 7. The only thing to do was ... who she was. (to explain) 8. He didn't know what to talk to him about. It was like ... an unknown brother, (to meet) 9. All he wanted to do was ... and(to sit, to dream) 10. To love John was like ... alive, (to burn) 11. The first objective was ... ourselves a suitable house to live in. (to find) 12. «To say that you are a fool is ... it very mildly,» said Douglas, (to put) 13. All I wanted to do was ... the formalities short, (to cut) 14. The loss of his job meant ... poor again, (to be) 15. The best thing for you to do is ... the thought of her out of your mind, (to put). 16. One of the first things he did was ... his brother, (to telephone)

Ex. 4. State the doer of the action expressed by the infinitives and the ing -forms used as predicatives in the following sentences:

1. The last thing I want is for him to think I'm deceiving him. 2. The really important thing was saving the children. 3. Unable to understand the text, he did the next best thing which was to learn it by heart. 4. To cross the stream in the place meant walking knee -deep in the water. 5. She thought that the straight -forward method was to write a couple of lines to the man himself. 6. To discuss the international situation with them was like someone playing the piano only with the family to listen to him. 7. All he wanted at this moment was for everyone to disperse quietly. 8. The only service you can do him is to keep quiet. 9. All he wanted was for me to get out of his sight. 10. My job is to please my guests. 11. The least I can do is give them a chance. 12. All they wanted to do was get down to business.

Ex. 5. Choose between the infinitive and the ing -form to use it as part of a compound verbal predicate in the following sentences:

1. I seem ... my life saying good -bye, (to spend) 2. I left the clothes lying wherever they happened (to fall) 3. She waited while Johnson went round ... hands with everybody, (to shake) 4. When they chanced ... she always gave him a friendly smile, (to meet). 5. As I stood ... on the corner of the street, Gerald Sutton came by. (to wait) 6. Caro sat ... the side of her glass, (to stroke) 7. I happened ... into her in the library, (to run) 8. Then a cricket ball came ... through the window and rolled underneath the piano, (to smash) 9. The print seemed ... before his eyes, (to blur) 10. I find plenty to do. I have a very nice neighbor. We go ... and ... together, (to fish, to sail) 11. Tom never seemed ... his mother to know what he had been doing, (to want) 12. I woke abruptly from sleep and sat up (to listen) 13. Martha was out ... her friend, (to meet) 14. He doesn't seem ... what love means, (to know) 15. Dick considered her suggestion and appeared ... it acceptable, (to find) 16. Her office turned out ... in one of the back streets, (to be) 17. So I sat ... at the diary, as at a blank space in a crossword puzzle, (to stare) 18. Jimmy proved ... a good teacher, (to be) 19. «So what?» she eyed me curiously. There seemed ... a faint foreign accent in her voice, (to be) 20. I sat ... from time to time that he would just go away, (to wish)

Ex. 6. Use the required form of the infinitive in its function of part of a compound verbal predicate in the following sentences:

1. He seemed ... all the friendliness he had shown at our previous meeting, (to lose) 2. «I happen ... her lawyer and she telephoned to me,» I said to the man. (to be) 3. It became clear that Charles was still idle. He seemed ... scarcely any law. (to read) 4. The cat seems ... missing for about three weeks, (to be) 5. He appeared ... that they had had the first serious difference of opinion in the whole of their married life, (to forget) 6. «Dr Salt, what do you think you're doing?» «People seem ... me that for days,» said Dr Salt mildly, (to ask) 7. Not going home, in fact, seemed lately ... the pattern of his life, (to become) 8. My mother thought that his hobbies would get him nowhere. In this she turned out ... wrong, (to be) 9. It seemed ... in the room. The floor, the chairs, the desk were covered in drifts of white. It was torn paper, (to snow) 10. She leant far over the banister and strained her ears. All the family seemed... at once, (to talk) 11. The general seemed ... a great deal, (to age) 12. Charles met me the first day I came to London, and our friendship seemed ... a long time, (to establish) 13. He did not even seem ... what the fuss was about, (to understand) 14. In front of one window there was a small table and Harry was sitting at it, peering at a pile of papers which he seemed ... or (to copy, to translate) 15. When I arrived there I didn't see the dog. Not much else seemed (to change)

Ex. 7. Translate the following into English using infinitives as part of a compound verbal predicate:

1. Это оказалось правдой, (to turn out) 2. Он, кажется, получил все, что хотел, (to seem) 3. Где мисс Стоун? - Она, кажется, работает в справочном отделе библиотеки, (to seem) 4. Создавалось впечатление, что у него нет близких отношений ни с кем в отделе, (to appear) 5. Боб взглянул на мать, чтобы посмотреть, как она воспринимает этот разговор. Но, она, казалось, его не слушала, (to seem) 6. Большая часть его сведений оказалась точной, (to turn out) 7. Казалось, что она пишет или рисует, (to seem) 8. Казалось, что сплетни эти не были восприняты моими братьями всерьез, (to seem) 9. Он, кажется, единственный друг, который у меня есть', (to seem) 10. Мой отец слушал серьезно или, по крайней мере, создавалось впечатление, что он слушал, (to appear) 11. У нас, кажется, уже был этот разговор раньше, (to seem) 12. Никто из вас, кажется, не знает, как вести себя прилично, (to seem) 13. Казалось, что его удивил этот слух, (to seem) 14. Было такое впечатление, что он не слышал, что она сказала, (to appear) 15. Я не знал этого парня, но он, кажется, всем тогда нравился, (to seem)

Ex. 8. Translate the following into English using ing -forms as part of a compound verbal predicate:

1. Он ездил верхом каждый день. 2. Она сидела, уставившись прямо перед собой. 3. Он вернулся с очень расстроенным видом. 4. Не -сколько человек сидели вокруг, ели сэндвичи и курили. 5. Я сказала мужу, что мне хочется пойти потанцевать. 6. Она долго лежала и плакала. 7. В то утро мальчик отправился кататься на лодке один. 8. Я ничего не сказал и мальчик ушел, насвистывая. 9. Мы стояли и ждали, когда откроются двери. 10. В то утро я пошел купаться. 11.

Она ушла в магазин. 12. При первом порыве ветра шляпа ее мужа полетела по воздуху. 13. Она дошла до дома раньше, чем прибежали два полицейских. 14. Они сидели и разговаривали о планах на будущее.

Ex. 9. Choose between the infinitive and the ing -form to use it as a second action accompanying the action of the predicate verb in the following sentences:

1. I returned to my room one afternoon ... Rex waiting for me. (to find). 2. That evening they sat on the back porch, ... the twilight filter down through the leaves of the trees, (to watch) 3. I looked at her for a minute, not (to understand) 4. Michael went home ... that his little son was taken ill. (to hear) 5. And so I spent three years ... an immense amount of very dull stuff, not one -tenth of which I ever used, (to learn) 6. She was approaching slowly, ... her feet, (to drag) 7. He arrived on the door step ... Peter fumbling with the lock, and they entered together, (to find) 8. I spent the rest of the day ... whether I was annoyed or not. (to wonder) 9. They went off, ... us to face the situation, (to leave) 10.... to Sam talking of his sister, I thought of Ellen alone in her flat in the same town, (to listen) 11. I came home one evening ... him sitting on the stairs outside the front door of the flat, (to discover) 12. He must have had a jolly time at lunch ... there ignored, (to sit) 13. My father was out and returned ... me in a condition of feverish anxiety, (to find) 14. Next morning, ... me in the hall, she told me that she was too tired to go out. (to meet) 15. He relapsed into sullenness, ... that he was too busy, (to say) 16. Sam spent some of his money ... her a present for her looking after his mother, (to buy) 17.... out of the house, Cliff practically walked into me. (to come) 18. The French teacher sat at her desk ... papers when Rudy led his father into the classroom, (to correct) 19. The snow turned into a cold rain. He awakened many times ... it falling on his face, (to feel) 20. They had difficulty ... new clothes for her. (to find)

Ex. 10. Translate the following into English using ing -forms to express second actions accompanying the action of the predicate verb:

1. Я посидел там немножко и просто посмотрел на людей. 2. Они оба остановились, прислушиваясь к голосам на лестнице. 3. О, Берт, я никогда не думала, что буду заканчивать свою жизнь, заворачивая какие -то незнакомые предметы в оберточную бумагу. 4. Бернард был еще в Шотландии. Он гостил у родственников. 5. Джек покачал головой, отклоняя идею. 6. Я лежал в постели, думая об этом весь день. 7. Какой -то человек вышел из дома. Он нес гитару. 8. Динни наверху. Она читает моему сыну. 9. Минуту мы стояли не двигаясь, не в состоянии понять, что происходит. 10. Он смотрел на подарок, не веря своим глазам.

Ex. 11. Translate the following into English using ing -forms to denote a second action after the expressions 'to spend (to waste) time', 'to have a good (hard, etc.) time' and 'to have difficulty (trouble)':

1. Она провела весенние каникулы, катаясь на лыжах с родителями. 2. Она без труда достанет тебе работу в Голливуде. 3. Когда я пришла домой, я целый час убирала комнату. 4. Он обычно проводил утро, лежа на берегу. 5. Большую часть своего времени они проводили, читая или слушая музыку. 6. У них было трудное

время, когда они жили в Дублине. 7. Я с трудом вспоминал имя этого человека. 8. Нам досталось, когда мы искали такси ночью. 9. Не теряя времени, он добрался до Лондона. 10. Старик с трудом разжевывал мясо. 11. Мы очень весело потанцевали. 12. Ей стоило хлопот заставить ребенка съесть завтрак. 13. Я потерял два часа, прождав тебя на станции. 14. Ей было скучно ухаживать за теткой. 15. Я не хочу проводить этот вечер, надоедая тебе своими рассказами.

Ex. 12. Choose between the infinitive and the ing -form to use it as direct object to the predicate verb in the following sentences:

1. I wished ... quite fair, (to be) 2. I expected ... him in the drawing -room but he wasn't there, (to find) 3. I enjoyed ... to her talk of Viennese society in the days of her youth, (to listen) 4. Reggie promised ... in. (to look) 5. I wanted ... him up. (to cheer) 6. Jerry was enjoying himself and did not want ... away. I suggested ... him and ... him meet us at the station, (to come, to leave, to let) 7. Everything you've planned ... is sensible, (to do) 8. Riley offered ... into town and ... some coffee, (to drive, to get) 9. He longs ... down and ... a quiet country life, (to settle, to live) 10. Kate avoided ... John alone, (to see) 11. You keep ... things in Latin and you know I can't understand, (to say) 12. He preceded ... this by his own story, (to illustrate) 13. Her eyes were full and bright. She did not pretend... her nervousness (to hide) 14. Jack asked the stewardess for some stationary and, when it came, set about ... a letter to his son. (to compose) 15. Renny was often dead right, more often than I cared (to remember) 16. He sat there sullenly and refused (to answer) 17. I didn't mind ... about them a bit. (to think) 18. He had just finished ... up a suitcase, (to strap) 19. He did not hesitate ... such methods, (to employ) 20. We arranged (to meet) 21. He stopped ... and went into the bathroom to turn the water on for the bath, (to whistle) 22. His sister -in -law certainly needed... after, (to look) 23. As I grew ... him I began ... him. (to know, to like) 24. We can't afford ... you. (to waste) 25. I can't help ... Sophy, (to like) 26. Arthur had managed ... it his way. (to do) 27. I couldn't resist ... such a lovely hat. (to buy) 28. She says she can't imagine not ... his key in the lock, (to hear) 29. I hadn't understood why, the previous summer, he had given up Roger, (to attempt, to see) 30. I notice that you took the trouble ... your picture into all the papers, (to get)

Ex. 13. Choose between the infinitive and the ing -form to use it as direct object after verbs that admit, for various reasons, of both forms:

1. She tried ... an interest in my work, (to take) 2. To learn to write I tried ... words or the order in which they were set. (to alter) 3. Why didn't you try ... yourself a job? (to find) 4. She tried ... , but her fingers were numb, (to knit) 5. Margaret and I were upset and the other went on us up. (to try, to cheer) 6. The article went on ... that Miss MacLean was born in Dublin and still had relations living there, (to say) 7. He went on ... about his children, (to talk) 8. He proposed ... to the theatre that night, but Elisa said she was tired, (to go) 9. I propose ... a boat with the money, (to buy) 10. In the following pages I propose ... the story of Goethe's life, (to tell) 11. One of them proposed ... out later on to watch the children dancing, (to go) 12. I must remember ... the others not to mention it to Willy, (to tell) 13. Yes, I remember ... the letter on the mantle piece, (to see) 14. I remember ... for a drive by a kind lady who wanted to show me round, (to take) 15. I must remember ... through my pockets, (to look) 16. I

remember ... to hear endless incidents from my mother's childhood, (to have) 17. I must remember not ... , he thought, and must lose some weight. I look like a fat grocer, (to slouch) 18. The general never forgot ... his boys out for a drive one Sunday day in June, (to take) 19. Don't forget ... the door when you decide to go to bed. (to lock) 20. I now regretted not ... with her, but it was too late to run after her. (to go) 21. I regret... you but you ought to know the facts, (to disappoint) 22. I think he was beginning ... it. (to doubt) 23. She could not begin (to unpack) 24. Harriet cleared her throat and began ... her pockets for cigarettes, (to search) 25. He began ... the draft of a new plan that afternoon, just to see how it looks, (to write) 26. Without waiting for his reply she began ... the plums, (to gather) 27. Meanwhile he never ceased ... at his art. (to work) 28. I have now eaten turtle soup so often that I have ceased ... upon it as a luxury, (to look) 29. Margaret continued ... his wife in hospital, (to visit) 30. He continued ... the tune, (to hum)

Ex. 14. Translate the following into English using infinitives or ing -forms as direct object:

1. Она стала плакать, (to begin) 2. Я хотел что-нибудь выяснить о нем. (to want) 3. Он совсем проснулся и был склонен почитать, но единственной книгой в комнате была библия, (to feel like) 4. Поль не нуждается в защите, (to need) 5. Он любил находиться в обществе своих родственников, (to like) 6. Он непрерывно поглядывал на часы, и когда он выпил чай, он сказал, что должен возвращаться, (to keep) 7. Теперь я начинал понимать кое-что, (to begin) 8. Вскоре я перестал быть полезным им. (to cease) 9. Дэн не мог устоять и не показать своей работы, (to resist) 10. Даже в затемненной комнате я не мог не видеть, что лицо миссис Джоунз распухло от слез, (cannot help) 11. Все то январское утро телефон настойчиво звонил в моем кабинете, (to keep) 12. Я предложил найти доктора и привести его к Эду. (to propose) 13. Я не думаю, чтобы он упоминал о том, что навещал их. (to mention) 14. Они позабыли пригласить меня, (to forget) 15. Я никогда не забуду, как я гостил в вашем доме в Кенте, (to forget) 16. Я пытаюсь читать, (to try) 17. Мне не хотелось оставлять его одного в горе, и я предложил отвезти его к себе домой, (to want, to offer) 18. Я отложил письмо к нему на завтра, (to put off) 19. Я не мог вынести, чтобы со мной обращались так холодно, (to endure) 20. Она не возражала против того, чтобы быть одной в коттедже, (to mind) 21. Я всерьез принялся писать короткие рассказы, (to set about) 22. Он был рад, что она позаботилась написать ему. (to take the trouble) 23. Ты помнишь, как ты доставлял виноградный сок в этот дом в то утро? (to remember) 24. Ты не забыл послать деньги в Лидс? (to remember) 25. Я решил не беспокоить Роджера этим делом, (to decide)

Ex. 15. Use the required form of the infinitive or the ing -form in their function of direct object in the following sentences:

1. He enjoyed (to need) 2. Willy began ... softly, (to whistle) 3. In my experience most people mind ... at, (to laugh) 4. I don't suppose your wife wants ... with me now. (to bother) 5. I knew that Charles had regretted ... me. (to invite) 6. He pretended ... when his mother came into his room to look at him. (to sleep) 7. She didn't like ... with, (to differ) 8. He pretended not... as if the compliment were purely formal, (to

hear) 9. He prefers ... by the name of John Brown, (to know) 10. I don't like ... with, (to interfere) 11. I set about ... all the names from the diary, (to erase) 12. Bob asked... to a room where he could wash and change his clothes, (to show) 13. I disliked ... Harry, (to call) 14. We stopped in front of the dance hall and pretended ... inside, (to look) 15. Maurice sat on the bench, with the picture on his knee, as though he would not risk ... from it. (to part)

Ex. 16. Choose between the infinitive and the ing -form to use it as direct object to an adjective in the following sentences:

1. Dick was clearly anxious ... , and I was rather hurt ... Clare apparently equally keen ... so. (to go, to find, to do) 2. Words have weight, sound and appearance; it is only by considering these that you can write a sentence that is good ... at and good ... to. (to look, to listen) 3. I was busy ... to figure out whether he had told me the truth, (to try) 4. His brother's emotion was not easy (to discern) 5. His proposition was worth (to consider) 6. Everyone in this room is competent ... an opinion, (to express) 7. The picture is definitely worth (to buy) 8. You see, a lot of us are prone ... it. (to forget) 9. The girl was very wise ... their advice, (to take) 10. He was busy ... on the new play, (to work) 11. I was fascinated ... the two of them together, (to watch) 12. Charles was slow ... what Mr. March was feeling, (to see) 13. The little girl was busy ... out pages from the telephone directory, (to tear) 14. It must be admitted that this writer is not hard (to imitate)

Ex. 17. Translate the following into English using infinitives or ing -forms as direct objects to adjectives:

1. Работу все еще было трудно найти, и мне не очень -то везло первые несколько дней, (hard) 2. Ее нижняя губа дрожала, словно она готова была разрыдаться, (ready) 3. Ее улыбка быстро исчезла: «Ты с ума сошел, что пришел», (crazy) 4. Мама была занята приготовлением еды на кухне, (busy) 5. Он попрощался со мной за руку: «Мне жаль, что приходится уходить», (sorry) 6. Некоторое время я был очень доволен, что мог побыть один, (content) 7. Песню стоило записать на пленку, (worth) 8. Он быстро сообразил, что случилось, (quick) 9. За их спором было трудно следить, (hard) 10. Рано или поздно вы обязательно услышите об этом, (certain) 11. Он жил на те небольшие деньги, которые его отец сумел отложить, (able) 12. Об этой новости стоило написать его отцу, (worth) 13. Он был очень доволен, что застал брата дома, (delighted) 14. В такой день что -нибудь неизбежно должно было случиться, (sure) 15. Я не был достаточно заинтересован в том, чтобы продолжать спор, (interested) 16. Вам повезло, что вы живете в таком красивом месте, (lucky) 17. Его жена была в Лондоне. Она была занята тем, что искала для них новое жилье, (busy) 18. Вероятно, я этого не сделаю, (likely) 19. Таких результатов невозможно достичь, (impossible) 20. Я удивился, когда мне позвонил Чарльз, (surprised) 21. Я глубоко уважал ее и гордился знакомством с нею. (proud) 22. Я был волен уходить и приходить, когда хотел, (free) 23. Ожидалось, что его самолет вылетит в час. (due) 24. Я очень огорчился, найдя его таким больным, (distressed) 25. Этого человека легко было понять, (easy)

Ex. 18. Translate the following into English using 'wh -phrases':

1. Он теперь не знал, как провести день. 2. Я больше не знаю, кому верить. 3. Мы сидели несколько минут молча. Мы не знали, о чем разговаривать. 4. Я не знал, благодарить его снова или нет. 5. Он снял очки и поискал, чем бы их протереть. 6. Она нашла для себя большой удобный камень, у которого можно было сесть. 7. Я не мог решить, где его искать. 8. Он, казалось, не был уверен, по какой дороге идти. 9. Он научился, как ладить с такими людьми. 10. Осень - не подходящее для путешествий время года. 11. У него осталось мало времени для сна. 12. Филипп не знал, уходить ему или оставаться. 13. Там было слишком много ножей, вилок и ложек, и он не знал, что с ними делать. 14. «Мужчины - странные существа, и нужно знать, как с ними справляться», - сказала мне Энн. 15. Я просто не знал, что мне делать с братом.

Ex. 19. Supply the necessary prepositions for the ing -forms used as prepositional objects of verbs in the following sentences:

1. Jones insisted ... shaking hands. 2. I take all the blame ... not seeing further than my nose. 3. She glanced up ... marking a pile of papers, and said: «Hello, Hugh.» 4. Unfortunately I haven't succeeded ... making much impression on you. 5. He made a point ... never sounding disappointed. 6. His mission had very little to do ... winning the war. 7. He had never had much difficulty ... getting jobs. The trouble had always been ... keeping them. 8. She thanked him ... taking her out. 9. He did not object ... seeing Francis. 10. If he persists ... marrying the girl, it will mean absolute ruin for him. 11. She took ... wearing jeans. 12. When asked what his father did in life, the boy answered, «My father works ... keeping the world ... having another war.» 13. I shall look forward ... seeing your book. 14. I thought ... taking a trip up the Scandinavian coast. 15. Jack hesitated, then decided ... talking. 16. I told him that we were about to be turned out of our flat ... not paying the rent. 17. I hated him ... laughing with the others. 18. So when she compromised ... letting me talk her ... having at least some grape juice, I let it go at that. 19. He went back ... reading his paper. 20. Quite late, when he was on the point ... going upstairs, the door bell rang.

Ex. 20. State the doer of the action expressed by the ing -form used as prepositional object to a verb in the following sentences:

1. She had not succeeded in making her sister talk. 2. I do not blame him for worrying. 3. She felt sure that nothing good would result from Milly's playing around with Tom. 4. I like to think of this old house still being of use. 5. Beryl insisted on being married in London. 6. The doctor ordered wine and insisted on her sharing his bottle with him. 7. The critics accused him of writing down to the public. 8. Did she seem to object in any way to your visiting the house?

Ex. 21. Use the required form of the ing -form in its function of prepositional object to a verb in the following sentences:

1. He was just going to speak, when I caught sight of Ellen ... past us. (to walk) 2. I wondered if I ought to apologize for ... the letter, (to write) 3. I hate to think of you ... about, (to order) 4. My mother had always insisted on ... the weakest possible electric light bulbs, (to use) 5. I hated to think of her wishes ... in any way. (to force) 6. Now

he often asked for tea at home and insisted on it ... correctly, (to make) 7. Mel was still not sure why he had called up, but he felt better for ... so. (to do) 8. He muttered something about ... such a doll in a shop, (to see) 9. I've never heard of his ... with that family, (to connect) 10. Casie could never forgive her younger sister for ... from home and ... an affluent husband, (to escape, to marry) 11, I thought myself a fool for not ... it months before, (to guess)

Ex. 22. Translate the following into English using *ing* -forms as prepositional objects to verbs:

1. Он не возражал против того, чтобы там находились другие люди. (to object) 2. Я не виню тебя за то, что тебе так хочется уехать из города в такую погоду, (to blame) 3. Я не имел никакого отношения к тому, что он принял это решение, (to have nothing to do) 4. Тогда я заподозрил его в том, что он меня дразнит, (to suspect) 5. Нам было не трудно быть приятным друг другу, (to have no difficulty) 6. Он настаивал на том, чтобы научить ее этой сложной игре, (to insist) 7. Не было ничего, что могло бы помешать ему вернуться в Лондон, (to prevent) 8. Он извинился, что задержал меня, (to apologize) 9. Мне не удалось заставить Энн говорить, (to succeed) 10. Отец часто обвинял меня в том, что я отношусь к дому как к отелю, (to accuse) 11. Я был в самом деле не уверен, что я чувствую по поводу того, что Джек приезжает домой, (to feel) 12. Я сказал ему о том, что Фил хочет пойти с нами, (to tell) 13. У отеля она настояла на том, чтобы заплатить за такси, (to insist) 14. Дэн уговорил Белла остаться с ним завтракать, (to talk) 15. Он посмотрел вниз на то, как вода собирается у его ног в лужу, (to look down) 16. Доктор начал с того, что пощупал его пульс, (to begin) 17. На секунду я испугался, что он задумал подать в отставку, (to think) 18. Он настоял на том, чтобы Анну немедленно пригласили сюда, (to insist) 19. Я не одобряю его за то, что он вообще влез в это дело, (to disapprove) 20. Я спросил его, как ему нравится быть доктором, (to feel about)

Ex. 23. Supply the necessary prepositions for the *ing* -forms used as prepositional objects to adjectives in the following sentences:

1. The man of letters is accustomed ... writing. 2. I became aware of the specific benefit I was capable ... getting from travel. 3. Mrs. Attley was very skilful ... directing the table talk away from her daughter. 4. Some people were nice ... turning me down. 5. I'm sick ... doing things for you. 6. You seem upset ... losing Jones. 7. She was set ... helping him. 8. I don't say I'm proud ... cheating him out of 300 dollars. 9. Your colleagues are good ... keeping a secret, aren't they? 10. He is usually fairly careful ... making his statements. 11. He is quite excited ... being among us again. 12. It was five minutes later than my usual bedtime and I felt guilty ... being still up. 13. She was quick ... finding out things. 14. Dolly seemed relieved ... not having to make a scene. 15. I tried to be as nice as possible ... refusing. 16. You seem very fond ... saying things behind my back. 17. But he was slow ... replying. 18. He selected a dingy little place where he felt sure ... not meeting any acquaintances.

Ex. 24. State the doer of the action expressed by the *ing* -form used as prepositional object to an adjective in the following sentences:

1. He is incapable of telling a lie. 2. You remember how shocked he was at Meg leaving her husband. 3. My husband will be furious at me for seeing you. 4. After all, I'm fairly used to keeping my mouth shut. 5. He was jealous of his friend for winning Ann. 6. Eden said, «I'm sorry about the car being cold.» 7. After half an hour he began to feel tired of looking at copies of agreements and bills. 8. He was impatient with me for being so stubborn. 9. It turned out that Maurice was wrong about there being no tourists in the hotel. 10. He suddenly became conscious of someone standing beside his desk.

Ex. 25. Use the required form of the *ing* -form in its function of prepositional object to an adjective in the following sentences:

1. From the age of four, I had been used to ... with ideas, (to live) 2. I was not used to ... by a sensitive and nervous host, (to entertain) 3. How proud I was of... the code, (to invent) 4. I was tired of always ... charity clothes, (to wear) 5. In the morning she was ashamed of herself for ... so rude the night before, (to be) 6. He's merely used to ... what he wants to know, (to tell) 7. He was grateful to Finch for ... him to come, (to persuade) 8. But they are used to ... with real men. (to deal) 9. She wasn't fond of ... (to interview) 10. At the time I was very keen on ... an independent income, (to get)

Ex. 26. Translate the following into English using *ing* -forms as prepositional objects to adjectives:

1. Ты умеешь держать язык за зубами, (good) 2. Я гордился тем, что пригодился ему. (proud) 3. Я знал, что он не способен принимать решения, (capable) 4. Доктор привык выслушивать всяких людей, (used) 5. Мне жаль, что я причинил вам так много беспокойства, (sorry). 6. Я больше, чем ты, заинтересован в том, чтобы найти ее. (interested). 7. Я уверен, что ты вполне способен справиться с большинством ситуаций, (capable) 8. Мне надоело пытаться делать то, что мне давалось нелегко, (tired) 9. Я удивился тому, что он вообще женился, (surprised) 10. Я был немного разочарован тем, что не встретил Чарльза, (disappointed) 11. Она была благодарна ему за то, что он понял, что ей не хочется говорить о себе, (grateful) 12. Он был раздражен на нее зато, что она втянула его в эту ссору, (annoyed) 13. Он любил смеяться над теми, кто был робок, (fond)

Ex. 27. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing* -form to use it as object to a verb in sentences with a formal 'it' as subject or object:

1. It came as a shock to me ... that he had left his wife, (to realize) 2. I laughed. It made me feel good ... that someone else felt the same way about it as I did. (to know) 3. It didn't serve any purpose ... why Marion had decided to be friends with me. (to analyze) 4. No one has any influence over him when it comes to ... his actions, (to decide) 5. It is against the law in the country ... a revolver, (to carry) 6. When it came to ... you talk about the war, I felt like a child, (to hear) 7. It amazed me ... that Pat not only understood his arguments but shared them, (to feel) 8. On the expedition it matters a lot ... young, (to be) 9. Our hostess made it a point never ... wives with their husbands, (to ask) 10. When it comes down to ... children do something against their

will it pay ... rationally with them, (to make, to argue)

Ex. 28. Translate the following into English using infinitives or ing -forms as objects to verbs in sentences with a formal 'if' as subject:

1. Он очень устал, и ему потребовалось усилие, чтобы вылезти из машины, (to take) 2. Я не думаю, что ему доставляло удовольствие ссориться, (to amuse) 3. Сколько бы ей потребовалось времени, чтобы найти другую квартиру? (to take) 4. Когда мне было пора уходить, она попросила меня позвонить ей в тот же вечер, (to be time) 5. Мне было приятно думать, что он не знает о моих планах, (to please) 6. Его пальцы дрожали так сильно, что ему потребовалось четыре спички, чтобы зажечь сигарету, (to take) 7. Мэри раздражало, когда она слышала, как Вилли употребляет немецкое слово или фразу, (to irritate) 8. То, что Пэт была в слезах, не имело большого значения, (to matter) 9. Потребовалось не так много времени, чтобы на кухне стало холодно, (to take) 10. Спустя некоторое время она сказала, что теперь его очередь рассказать, что он хочет делать, (to be one's turn) 11. Мне не приходило в голову сравнивать эти две книги, (to occur) 12. Я получила большое удовольствие, читая это письмо, (to delight) 13. Ему было мучительно видеть, как ее тело сотрясается от рыданий, (to torture) 14. Может быть, вам было бы интересно посмотреть, что за человек этот Аллен. (to be of interest) 15. Мне доставило удовольствие писать эссе о его романах, (to give pleasure) 16. Меня пленяют поездки по незнакомым местам, (to fascinate) 17. Мне делается жарко, когда я смотрю на него, одетого таким образом, (to make hot) 18. Когда дело дошло до приготовления обеда, она расплакалась, (to come down) 19. Они никогда не узнали, сколько ей потребовалось храбрости, чтобы задать этот вопрос, (to take) 20. Кэт было забавно думать, что все почувствовали себя столь шокированными, (to amuse)

Ex. 29. Choose between the infinitive and the ing -form to use it as object to an adjective in sentences with a formal 'it' as subject, remembering that the infinitive in this function is neutral in style whereas the ing -form is highly colloquial and often emotionally colored:

1. It is not necessary, Steve, ... everything that comes to your mind, (to say) 2. Wouldn't it be prudent ... with the problem before it got talked about? (to deal) 3. It was impossible not... a touch of pity for him. (to feel) 4. It was hard ... his age. (to judge) 5. It's absolutely monstrous ... Charles for a brother! (to have) 6. It is hard ... the difference between the two pictures, (to tell) 7. It was difficult ... on the beach, (to walk) 8. Well, it's nasty ... this mess up. (to clear) 9. The weather was shocking: it rained every day, and it was impossible even ... for boring walks, (to go) 10. I dare say it would have been more reasonable ... this proposal, (to decline) 11. It's slightly embarrassing ... under suspicion, isn't it? (to be) 12. It isn't easy ... all this, (to explain) 13. It seemed to me a little ungracious ... the invitation of that sort, (to decline) 14. Oh, dear, it's very difficult ... a good wife, (to be) 15. It will be great ... you with us for the summer, (to have)

Ex. 30. Translate the following into English using infinitives and ing -forms in their function of object to an adjective in sentences with a formal 'it' as subject; be careful, when necessary, to indicate in the proper way the doer of the action expressed by the verbals:

1. Вполне возможно иметь разные взгляды по одному и тому же спорному вопросу, (possible)
2. Приятно находиться вне помещения в такую погоду, (nice)
3. Было просто великолепно, что Барт был с нами, (wonderful)
4. В такой дождь трудно достать такси, (tough)
5. По -видимому, на этот домик стоило посмотреть, (worth)
6. Было довольно мило с его стороны поспешить домой, чтобы рассказать ей все без задержки, (sweet)
7. Будет очень мило, если у моего сына будет дружок для игр его возраста, (nice)
8. В жаркий день очень приятно окунуться в холодную воду, (delightful)
9. С твоей стороны было по -дружески сделать это так быстро, (friendly)
10. Неестественно, чтобы молодой человек проводил все свои вечера дома, (natural)
11. Необходимо решить сегодня, приглашать ли его. (necessary)
12. Крайне досадно, что он исчез подобным образом, (annoying)
13. Было очень неприятно причинять боль старому человеку, (hateful)
14. Тогда я подумал, что будет глупо с моей стороны не извлечь пользу, если это возможно, (silly)
15. Не было необычным, что праздничные обеды кончались подобным образом, (unusual)

Ex. 31. Translate the following into English using infinitives as objects to adjectives in sentences with a formal 'it' as object:

1. Мне было трудно сосредоточиться все утро, (to find -difficult)
2. Тебе будет нелегко забыть этот случай, (to find -hard)
3. Мы считали, что ей лучше всего уехать и пожить немного в Лондоне, (to think -best)
4. Он нашел, что очень хорошо спать в своей собственной кровати, (to find -good)
5. Он счел странным со стороны Тома, что тот пришел, (to think -odd)
6. Ты хочешь, чтобы я помогла тебе уехать от нас, не так ли? (to make -easy)
7. Я счел возможным задать еще один вопрос, (to think -possible)
8. Он не счел необходимым сказать ему об этом, (to think -necessary)
9. Шум не дал мне возможно сти услышать, о чем о ни говорили, (to make -impossible)
10. Они все почувствовали, что со стороны Энн неразумно уйти, не сказав ни слова, (to feel -unreasonable)
11. Я счел странным с твоей стороны, что ты не остался выпить со мной чаю. (to think -odd)
12. Заботливость тетки дала ей возможность привыкнуть к новому образу жизни, (to make -possible)
13. Я почувствовал, что было несколько неразумно продолжать разговор на ту же тему, (to feel -unwise)
14. Ему не показалось необходимым принимать какие -либо меры предосторожности, (to feel -necessary)
15. Мне было трудно забыть наш разговор, (to find -hard)
16. Мне невозможно было быть с ним откровенным, (to find -impossible)
17. Сочтете ли вы это удобным, если я зайду к вам в понедельник? (to find - convenient)
18. Мне трудно его понять, (to find -hard)
19. Грант счел за лучшее все отрицать, (to think -best)
20. Дурное настроение Хью лишило меня возможности обратиться к нему с просьбой, (to make impossible)

Ex. 32. Choose between the infinitive and the ing -form to use it as subjective predicative in the following sentences:

1. He was left ... a couple of hours, (to sleep) 2. When the car was heard ... the people fled anywhere to avoid the police, (to approach) 3. He was understood ... the new teacher, (to be) 4. Her brother was reported ... alive in Europe, (to be) 5. I don't see how anyone can be expected ... a case like this, (to tackle) 6. His book was found ... a fine piece of writing, (to be) 7. In your story he is shown ... a lot for other people, (to do) 8. I was made ... at the gate, (to stand) 9. She may have found the note because she was seen ... through the book, (to look) 10. He has never been known ... his temper at rehearsals, (to lose) 11. I think you'd like to know, sir, that the train has been heard ... (to whistle) 12. People can feel satisfaction if they are made ... they are doing a useful service, (to feel) 13. When they were getting into the car he was heard ... good luck to the girl, (to wish) 14. From the hill a man could be seen ... half a mile away, (to run) 15. He was instructed ... for a special grant, (to apply) 16. It was a two -storey grey building with a porch that no one was meant ... on. (to sit) 17. The strong currents were thought ... bathing dangerous, (to make) 18. She was found ... herself by the fire, (to warm) 19. He was forced ... out of his present job. (to get) 20. She was understood as ... any interviews, (to refuse) 21. Renny was heard ... gaily in his room, (to whistle) 22. The game was intended ... time until about nine o'clock, (to kill) 23. She was heard ... the light on. (to turn) 24. He has been known ... his temper occasionally, (to show) 25. Meg was called upon ... her opinion, (to express) 26. Two constables were left ... his arrival, (to await) 27. He was found ... a well -read man. (to be) 28. His clothes were left ... wherever they happened to fall, (to lie) 29. «You were seen ... the ring.» «I took it but I didn't steal it.» (to take) 30. The car belonged to the firm, and I wasn't supposed ... it for my own pleasure, (to use).

Ex. 33. Use the required form of the infinitive in its function of subjective predicative in the following sentences:

1. Monty was rumored ... his wife, (to divorce) 2. People were asked ... which of the four courses they preferred, (to indicate) 3. «Do you know who made up the story?» «No, but it's said ... someone in the office.» (to be) 4. We were alleged ... our official knowledge to make some money, (to use) 5. They went off, and I was left... the situation, (to face) 6. They were understood (to quarrel) 7. «Have you seen anything of Roberta lately?» «She is supposed ... a book.» (to write) 8. His death was supposed ... by the fire, (to cause) 9. No one seemed to know her whereabouts. She was thought ... with friends in the country, (to stay) 10. She was not expected ... , but she did. (to reply)

Ex. 34. Translate the following into English using infinitives or ing -forms as subjective predicatives:

1. Слышали, как посетитель в разговоре с моим отцом упомянул какой -то несчастный случай, (to hear) 2. Ему посоветовали не рассказывать им историю своей жизни, (to advise) 3. Девочке велели разлить в чашки чай. (to tell) 4. Слышали, как несколько минут тому назад они спорили на террасе, (to hear) 5. «Я имел обыкновение украдкой уходить из дома вечером, - сказал он, - когда предполагалось, что я занимаюсь, и отправлялся в церковь играть на органе», (to

suppose) 6. Полагают, что он глубоко привязан к своей семье, (to believe). 7. Было известно, что он пишет книгу о нравах, (to know) 8. Через окно можно было видеть, что водитель ждет у машины, (to see) 9. На этот раз меня попросили зайти к нему домой, (to ask) 10. Сообщили, что он изменил свое решение, (to report) 11. Когда я позвонил в дверь, было слышно, как в холле лает собака, (to hear) 12. Было известно, что он никогда не отказывался принять пациента в любое время, (to know) 13. Ему разрешили оставить у них свою фамилию и адрес, (to allow) 14. Симон и Дик остались разговаривать в гостиной, (to leave) 15. Ей дали понять, что она должна выехать из этой квартиры, (to make) 16. Некоторые полагали, что у него есть связи с лондонским отделением фирмы, (to believe) 17. Нас оставили, чтобы мы посмотрели фильм, (to leave) 18. Его не видно целую неделю. Говорят, что он в отпуске, (to say) 19. Ему велели прийти сюда к мистеру Эбботу. (to tell) 20. Фокса нашли ожидающим нас на террасе, (to find) 21. Билла провели в гостиную и оставили там посмотреть картины, (to leave) 22. От нас не требуют, чтобы мы сказали, что для него хорошо, а что нет. (to require) 23. Его присутствие было неожиданным, потому что говорили, что он путешествует на востоке, (to say) 24. Я подумал, что спички не оставляют лежать в саду просто так. (to leave) 25. Сложилось мнение, что он обаятельный человек, (to find)

Ex. 35. Supply where necessary the particle 'to' before the infinitive used as objective predicative in the following sentences:

1. He was making every effort to induce his father ... change his mind. 2. But I got him ... talk. 3. Nevertheless, on those mornings he could not bring himself ... read the political correspondents' gossip -columns. 4. I knew that he would never encourage his daughter ... marry a fortune. 5. As he answered her question, I noticed her ... look surprised. 6. I could feel the blood ... leave my face in a rush. 7. Understand once and for all, I won't have you ... say this sort of thing. 8. The doctor had expressly forbidden him ... talk. 9. He did not hear the car ... arrive. 10. He had never known his uncle ... express any sort of feeling. 11. I wasn't prepared to let him ... go out alone. 12. He was not only giving them the chance, he was pressing them ... do so. 13. I shall try to make the thing ... work. 14. They watched Esther ... return after a time. 15. He drew out a stiff, plain pocket-book as I had often seen him ... use it in meetings, and began to write down numbers.

Ex. 36. Choose between the infinitive and the ing -form to use it as objective predicative in the following sentences:

1. My will was weakened. I wanted someone ... on. (to lean) 2. We stood for a while watching a man ... an Alsatian puppy, (to train) 3. I can imagine people not ... him. (to like) 4. Although he was very tired he made himself ... up and ... into the bedroom, (to stand, to move) 5. He ordered a bottle of beer and some cheese ... up to his room, (to send) 6. There was a lot of noise all around now, and amongst it you could hear a plane ... unusually low. (to fly) 7. I heard Arthur... a slight noise which may have been a sigh or a chuckle, (to make) 8. «Why do you always have him ... around?» «He likes it.» (to hang) 9. I don't like girls.... It takes away the fragrance of youth, (to smoke) 10. After supper Willy switched on the wireless and John left him ... round the drawing -room to

the sound of Mozart's piano concerto in C minor, (to dance) 11. We left him ... the afternoon with his family, (to spend) 12. I can't imagine you ... anything but what you are. (to be) 13. I saw Mother ...at me. (to look) 14. I saw Mother ... at me and ... away, (to look, to turn) 15. Adeline found her husband ... in the middle of the room waiting for her. (to stand) 16. He found you ... pretty liberal about your children, (to be) 17. Now I was over-confident. I expected things ... my way. (to go) 18. He guessed her age ... about eighteen, (to be) 19. I caught her ... at me. (to look) 20. James proved himself ... a man of his word,(to be) 21. We left the others ... outside the house, (to chat) 22. I left him ... with the issue by himself, (to deal) 23. He explained his behavior as ... to make up their quarrel, (to try) 24. If you go on talking like this you'll have me (to cry) 25. I found myself ... almost entirely on the grapes which the cook found it hard to spoil, (to live)

Ex. 37. Choose of the four possible ways the best suited one to denote the doer of the action expressed by the ing -form in its function of objective predicative in the following sentences:

1. I remember ... coming about Mary's arrival, (the telegram) 2. I thought that he was going to suggest ... assisting at another sitting. (I) 3. They noticed ... dancing with Ann. (their cousin) 4. He could imagine ... waiting for him. (she) 5. I found ... enjoying the talk. (I) 6. I hope you don't mind ... coming. (I) 7. We never had ... staying in this hotel, (a writer) 8. Do you think he wants to stop ... marrying? (I) 9. Just as habit kills love I should have thought habit would prevent ... arising, (it) 10. I can't see ... making much of a soldier, (my nephew) 11. The circumstances were grave enough to require ... remaining here, (he) 12. I remember ... going over to the US to marry there, (your daughter) 13. He hoped to delay ... going until he had come to some decision. (I) 14. As he set the carton down on the table he remembered ... saying: «You got here very fast. Thanks a lot.» (Mr. Fox) 15. I could not prevent ... deviating towards him. (my glance) 16. Mary thought, «You're jealous. You resent ... coming.» (I)

Ex. 38. Use the required form of the infinitive or the ing -form in their function of objective predicative in the following sentences:

1. He had persuaded me ... with him to Vienna for a few days, (to go) 12. If he finds it necessary, the district attorney may require an inquest (to hold) 3. We did not suspect him ... to the place before, (to be) 4. Do you expect me ... it? (to explain) 5. I took this ... true, (to be) 6. I took the article ... by my brother, (to write) 7. I suspected him ... his mind, (to change) 8. He wished his position on the Board ... from the beginning, (to establish) 9. «Where were you?» «Did you expect me ... for you all this time?» (to wait) 10. When he arrived he found me ... Tom Jones, (to read) 11. He felt the money ... from his grasp, (to take) 12. I heard her more than once ... by her mother that she might play with me if she wished, (to tell) 13. I left him ... that he had talked them into it. (to think) 14. I don't want that man to see me ... up the stairs, (to help) 15. In London she bought a lipstick. I remember her ... the various shades on the back of her hand, (to try)

Ex. 39. Translate the following into English using infinitives or ing -forms as objective predicatives in the following sentences:

1. Он наблюдал, как люди торопились к поездам, (to watch) 2. Он зажег себе сигару и постарался расслабиться, как вдруг он услышал, как открывается входная дверь, (to hear) 3. Мне известно, что он приезжал к ним несколько раз в этом году, (to know) 4. Я считаю эту новость очень важной, (to regard) 5. Джон не хотел оказаться играющим роль учителя, (to find) 6. Он нашел, что братья были очень знающими деловыми людьми, (to find) 7. Он нашел Фокса разговаривающим в кухне, (to find) 8. Я признателен твоему отцу за то, что он прислал мне свою машину, (to appreciate) 9. Я оговаривал их, чтобы они все обговорили, (to leave) 10. Когда я уходил, они разговаривали о политике, (to leave) 11. Джон не мог заставить себя вернуться в Лондон, (to bring oneself) 12. Было легко представить себе сидящую молча Кэт. (to imagine) 13. Позже она услышала, как вверх по лестнице носили багаж, (to hear) 14. Я чувствовал, что пора позвать доктора. Я велел Дэну позвонить для меня, (to get) 15. А где были монтеры? - Они меня ждали на крыльце, (to get) 16. Я помню, как он читал кое - какие свои стихи, (to remember) 17. Его жена была в душе. Он слышал, как течет вода, (to hear) 18. Он поднялся на холм и увидел, что машина ждет, (to see) 19. Я застал Кэт, когда она ела ранний ленч, перед тем как идти встречать Энн. (to find) 20. Он заставил меня пообещать навестить его. (to make) 21. Он заставил меня рассказать ему истории о моей семье, (to get) 22. Он не мог заставить себя прочитать рукопись, (to bring oneself) 23. Насколько я знаю, он никогда не терял вещи, (to know) 24. Затем он увидел, как Морис вошел в бар. (to see) 25. Он видел, что я смотрел на фотографию, (to see) 26. Она попросила меня встретиться у статуи, (to ask) 27. Твое письмо вынудило меня написать, что я чувствую, (to force) 28. Я посмотрел, как уехал второй автомобиль, и медленно пошел обратно в прохладный дом. (to watch) 29. Я увидел, что подходит мой автобус, и пошел, чтобы успеть сесть на него, (to see) 30. Он никогда не переставал искать возможности заставить нас подчиниться, (to make)

Ex. 40. Supply the necessary prepositions for the following sentences to introduce constructions in which the objective predicatives are expressed by infinitives and ing -forms:

1. We looked at the stamps while we waited ... Hudson to turn up. 2. He shouted ... them to come inshore when they ventured out too far into the sea. 3. They were trying to arrange ... the Prime Minister to interview him. 4. I sat up till one o'clock waiting ... Ted to ring up again, but he never did. 5. He took me to the party where he planned ... me to make a good impression. 6. The sentry looked ... the dark figure running desperately through the forest and took aim. 7. All four of us were waiting ... the point to come. 8. Every time I sat on the edge of his bed, to listen ... him talking or reading to me, I had to fight back my tears. 9. I'm absolutely relying ... you to tell me frankly. 10. He motioned ... the waiter to put the tray down. 11. Margaret listened ... her ski boots crunching in the packed snow as she walked up the hill. 12. It was not until a Saturday afternoon in May that Meg could arrange ... me to meet her elder sister.

Ex. 41. Translate the following into English using infinitives and ing -forms as prepositional objective predicatives:

1. Он ждал, когда я изложу свое дело, (to wait) 2. Я полагаюсь на то, что ты не будешь болтливым, (to rely) 3. Она стояла, слушая, как Розмари ссорится со своим братом, (to listen) 4. Я слышал, как он кричал нам, что бы мы остановились, (to stop) 5. Я остался в коридоре, дожидаясь, когда подойдет Чарльз, (to wait) 6. Спустя полчаса мне страстно захотелось, чтобы дети вернулись, (to long) 7. Пошли им, пожалуйста, телеграмму, чтобы они прислали мои вещи, (to wire) 8. Я вернулся к машине, где сел, ожидая, когда вернется Джордж, (to wait) 9. Я посмотрел на Джона, пьющего пиво, но он, казалось, не замечал меня, (to look) 10. Он кивнул Эндрю и показал ему жестом, чтобы он сел. (to motion) 11. Я посмотрел на свою мать, которая счастливо смеялась на шутки Тома, (to look) 12. Он ждал, когда она объяснит, почему она это сделала, (to wait) 13. Слушая, как Сэм рассказывает о своей сестре, я думал об Эллен, (to listen) 14. Я посмотрел на подъезжающий автобус и попрощался со своим спутником, (to look) 15. Мой дядя даже намекнул, что он, может быть, договорится, чтобы я провел день на ферме, (to arrange)

Ex. 42. Specify the kind of adverbial modifier that the infinitives express in the following sentences:

1. He took the advantage of this confusion to escape and ran up the stairs to the studio. 2. To hear him, one would think he was as poor as a church mouse. 3. He had no great difficulties at the time with his parents to look after him. 4. Jack moved a little, so as to be able to see beyond the group of young men. 5. These women have nothing to do but talk. 6. He rarely went out except to take part in the social life of the town. 7. We had to move in with my mother, with no place else to live in. 8. To avoid my mother's questions, I went up to my room. 9. The electrician had nothing to do but attend to his switches. 10. «I must be getting old,» she said, «to be talking like that.» 11. I brought my stamp -album for you to have a look at. 12. That night I couldn't help but notice how unhappy she was. 13. He built a fire and put a tin pot of water on to boil. 14. Soon you will have to stand on your own feet without your mother or me to fuss over you. 15. He took the picture down from the easel only to put it back against the wall. 16. You ought to know better than to ask questions like that. 17. You had only to look round to find a man to do the job. 18. He put his suitcase down and put his two hands to his face as if to cool it. 19. I've got more important things to do than argue with you. 20. How can she be content with you there to nag all the time?

Ex. 43. Specify the kind of adverbial modifier that the ing -forms function as in the following sentences:

1. I bumped into a man. Without looking up I apologized and proceeded on my way. 2. That morning my father said to me: «In sending you to this school, Henry, I'm making a sacrifice. I can't really afford it.» 3. The girl hesitated, as though not quite knowing what to do. 4. A week later I returned from school and found the house empty, my mother being at the shops. 5. At about seven, he strolled about the garden, as if looking for something. 6. It must be swell to get anything you want just by asking, I thought. 7. The musicians had vanished without his having seen them go. 8. She was not entirely

sure why it was so awful, even more awful than Hugh's knowing that she had returned without telling him. 9. On returning home from school I noticed a small jade statuette on our living-room shelf. 10. The cigarette burned down to my fingers and I threw it over the banister without putting it out. 11. The Cannings were taking an active part in the play. Penelope contriving new costumes at the lowest possible expense, Leo building a permanent set. 12. We strolled back to the camp, it being then about twenty minutes to six. 13. He had not, since leaving, written to her. 14. I took my temperature and, upon finding it was a hundred point four, went back to bed again. 15. I was to walk over to my grandmother's before going on home. 16. I showed my boredom by refusing to find any interest in the view. 17. That being understood, the conference was over. 18. They began to mount the path, Joseph lighting the way. 19. After checking into his room, he left the inn and arrived at the airport in time to go on duty. 20. She had many little things to do besides sitting idly in her house while waiting to be taken out by her boarder. 21. He hardly looked at her while talking. 22. «But the country is much better for you than working in the hot city all summer,» said Mrs. Cowan. 23. He had scarcely ever drunk tea at all until knowing Gwen. 24. When laughing she half closed her eyes and a dimple danced on her cheek. 25. Clare looked at him steadily before answering. 26. I couldn't stay in that place any more, not after living with them. 27. Though knowing what was there, he took the paper out and walked to the window to read.

Ex. 44. Supply the required conjunctions or prepositions for the *ing* -forms used as adverbial modifiers in the following sentences:

1. He sat alone with his head propped in his hands ... listening to music. 2. He hesitated ... seeing him, then strode on to meet him. 3. Again she told, and this time in detail, all she had been through with her daughter ... leaving home. 4. I never thought they would have left ... notifying me. 5. You can't escape it ... running away. 6. He hoped to get his boots ... anyone's seeing him. 7. I turned the car round ... stopping and came straight back. 8. I make the journey twice a day and usually pass the time ... falling into a light trance. 9. He poured milk into a jug from a carton in the refrigerator, then drank some milk himself... putting the carton back. 10.... swimming we lolled around on the beach and lay in the sun. 11.... arriving in the apartment, I found out they were planning a little party for me. 12. They walked to the house . . . speaking. 13. I left the dining -room ... paying my check, and went out into the lounge. 14. I thought that the telegram would be better . . . trying to explain the situation over the 'phone. 15. It was his habit ... settling down at a table to lay out at once his cigarette case and lighter.

Ex. 45. Translate the following into English using infinitives and *ing* -forms as adverbial modifiers to a verb:

1. Ожидая, когда официант вернется со льдом, Джек зажег сигарету. 2. Жена фермера приходила каждый день, чтобы убирать комнаты и готовить еду. 3. Она задумчиво посмотрела на меня, словно всерьез воспринимая то, что я сказал. 4. Он позвал Лолу назад, как будто для того, чтобы извиниться за что -то. 5. Он отказался привести себя в порядок перед тем, как идти пить чай. 6. Фил сунул деньги в карман, не сосчитав их. 7. Он начал с того, что вымел в коттедже. 8. Не дожидаясь его ответа, она стала собирать чашки. 9. Он ополоснул лицо и голову

холодной водой, словно для того чтобы охладить лихорадку. 10. Он утонул во время купания. 11. Прежде чем ответить, он зажег сигарету. 12. Затем, после того как я посмотрел по телевизору какую-то пьесу, я сказал, что пошел спать. 13. Он вернулся в отель и лег, даже не сняв ботинок. 14. Она не хотела оставаться наедине с мужем, чтобы не обсуждать никаких дел. 15. Эби не брился с самого прибытия в Париж. 16. Несколько минут мы шли, не говоря ни слова. 17. Затем он отвернулся, чтобы поговорить с кем-то внутри дома. При этом он убрал руку с двери. 18. Она повернулась, словно для того чтобы уйти. 19. Грант проявил какие-нибудь чувства, открыв посылку? 20. Он встал, словно для того чтобы пойти к гостям. 21. По прибытии я был рад обнаружить, что я всех там знал. 22. Он двигался очень медленно, как будто плыл. 23. Он делал все возможное, чтобы подружиться с нами. 24. Не дожидаясь разрешения, он зажег свет. 25. После купания мы выпили пива и поели сэндвичей.

Ex. 46. Translate the following into English using infinitives as adverbial modifiers to an adjective:

1. Я был слишком возбужден, чтобы есть. 2. Мой сын был достаточно взрослым, чтобы заметить мое настроение. 3. Будь добр, закрой дверь. 4. Я сказал, что я был слишком занят, чтобы разговаривать, и положил трубку. 5. Он был слишком ленив, чтобы относиться к своей профессии серьезно. 6. Всегда бывает достаточно легко найти основание для того, чтобы ничего не делать. 7. Он так устал, что был не в состоянии раздеться. 8. Я был слишком робок, чтобы заговорить с девушкой или даже посмотреть на нее как следует. 9. Я уверен, что ты слишком молод, чтобы помнить. 10. В то время он не достаточно хорошо себя чувствовал, чтобы путешествовать. 11. Свет был недостаточно сильным, чтобы я мог видеть выражение его лица. 12. Майкл был слишком раздражен, чтобы ответить сразу же. 13. Было слишком темно, чтобы он мог видеть мое лицо.

Ex. 47. Choose between the infinitive and the ing -form to use it as an attribute in the following sentences:

1. He had errands... first, (to do) 2. There was a shriveled potato ... on the ground. I picked it up, (to lie) 4. Alec was not at all an easy man ... presents to. (to give) 4. You remember I told you I'd something ... you? (to tell) 5. I wondered if he was trying to break some news ... me. (to affect) 6. I expect there'll be a lot ... up with, (to put) 7. They were used to having a ... man to spend a night or two at their inn. (to travel) 8. He took a last look at his calmly ... friend, (to sleep) 9. I guessed that I had disadvantages (to overcome) 10. John had nothing more ... him. (to show) 11. It's very good for them to have an older man with plenty of experience ... to for advice, (to come) 12. When I reached the bridge there was a swan ... downstream on the wide river, (to drift) 13. He's been used to comfort and to having someone ... after him. (to look) 14. The slowly ... circle of light from the torch revealed a short flight of steps, (to move) 15. I met your friend Ann Simon ... by Lewis, (to escort) 16. George was a tempting person ... about, (to gossip) 17. There was little in the forest ... to the romantic, (to appeal) 18. Mr. Brady, there is someone ... to look after you. (to come) 19. He gave her an ... look, (to admire) 20. I just want something ... , something ... myself busy, (to do, to keep) 21. On the other hand, it would be a quite interesting game (to try) 22. The lights in

the house were out, but a ... moon gleamed against one window, (to rise) 23. They reached a hotel ... Central Park, (to overlook) 24. The proper place ... at the house from was the lawn, (to look) 25. I particularly wanted to see John for a minute but there were patients ... to see him. (to wait) 26. She was much given to ... fits, (to cry) 27. Jack hurried past the customs, and out on the wet tarmac toward the ... plane, (to wait) 28. There was nothing (to do) 29. Freddy rose and raised an arm in a ... way. (to welcome) 30. Alayne was the first to hear the ... car. (to approach)

Ex. 48. Translate the following into English using infinitives and ing -forms as attributes:

1. У меня есть кое -что, что я должен тебе показать. 2. В вагоне был только один старик, который читал газету. 3. У него было трудное поручение, с которым ему надо было справиться. 4. У нее был брат, с которым всегда можно было играть, ссориться и которым можно было хвастаться перед другими девочками. 5. Он старался говорить в висящий микрофон. 6. Он был человеком, которому не так легко было помочь. 7. Дик налетел на молодую женщину, выходящую из зеленого магазина. 8. Посмотри, вон автобус останавливается. 9. Поль должен был о многом позаботиться. 10. О, Стив, мне нужно обсудить с тобой кое -что очень важное. 11. У меня масса бумаг, которые отец должен подписать. 12. Я встретил Сиду, возвращавшегося из города. 13. Я спустился вниз и раздобыл кое -что поесть. 14. Это была столовая, и за столом трое людей пили чай. 15. Я принес тебе бланки, которые надо заполнить. 16. Он получил телеграмму, в которой говорилось, что у его тетки случился удар. 17. Терраса была заполнена женщинами, пьющими чай. 18. На столе его ждало письмо. 19. Дрожаящими пальцами я пристегнул часы на запястье. 20. На это дерево легко влезть. 21. Они попрощались и сели в ожидавшую машину. 22. Я полагаю, что это такой вопрос, на который трудно дать ответ. 23. Он закрыл глаза и задремал в быстро мчавшейся машине. 24. Она воткнула цветок в волосы, рассыпавшиеся по ее плечам. 25. Как раз тогда он услышал бегущие шаги.

Ex. 49. Choose between the infinitive and the ing -form to use it as an attribute of appositive meaning in the following sentences:

Note: Using an ing -form, remember to supply it with the preposition 'of.'

1. He had to make an effort ... his voice, (to control) 2. Mel resisted the temptation ... and ... the search himself, (to take over, to direct) 3. He liked to practice his English but he did not have much opportunity ... so during the voyage, (to do) 4. I had no chance ... on his opinion, (to check) 5. I don't recognize their claim (to interfere) 6. Bill set about the problem ... a home for the Connolleys with zeal and method, (to find) 7. He seemed in the best of tempers at the prospect ... the evening away from his family, (to spend) 8. Talking to them I enjoyed the sense ..., ... part of a community, (to belong, to be) 9. Ordinarily, the process ... clothes irked me. (to buy) 10. He had a gift now and then ... nice things, (to say) 11. I dreaded the task ... him away, (to take) 12. I was spared the trouble ... because Bessie seemed in too great a hurry to listen to explanations, (to answer) 13. He had the great misfortune ... by his father, (to see) 14. He established us in groups of three with no chance (to transfer) 15. He would sit up straight in his bed with his feet tucked under him so that you had the impression ...

by a rajah, (to receive) 16. His stamps mean a lot to him. He won't miss this chance ... to them cheaply, (to add) 17. He had taken the precaution ... that I was the landlady's cousin, (to mention) 18. Sheila was gay, and had set herself the task ... me to take an interest in painting, (to teach) 19. The pebbles gave a general impression ... either white or mauve, (to be) 20. Can you see any way ... the risk? (to avoid) 21. But after a while they asked permission ... him out and lay him in the sun. (to carry) 22. You are getting into a bad habit... to yourself, (to talk) 23. Tom and Dave were both in the highest spirits, and had clearly no intention ... from me. (to part) 24. He was aware that his refusal ... now made the thing look graver than it was. (to explain) 25. John spoke well and enjoyed the chance (to show off) 26. He showed a disinclination ... my friend, (to meet) 27. It would give me the opportunity ... the full facts before you. (to put) 28. He sat by Roger's side, like one who is above the necessity (to talk) 29. If he drove to town, he knew he would have a chance ... out what was going on. (to find) 30. The joy ... home counteracted all the disadvantages, (to be) 31. After this, he often took the opportunity ... sneering things to me. (to say) 32. He had the satisfaction ... that he had done a good job. (to know) 33. I was torn between the fear ... a nice woman's feelings and the fear ... in the way. (to hurt, to be) 34. Also there was always the possibility ... into Ann herself. (I, to run) 35. I didn't have the opportunity ... him my brother's message. (to give)

Ex. 50. Translate the following into English using infinitives and ing -forms as attributes of appositive meaning:

1. Я не мог противостоять соблазну подразнить Тома, (temptation) 2. Через неделю он получил приказ немедленно отправиться в Порт, (order) 3. Конечно, у меня было то преимущество, что я очень хорошо знал этого человека, (advantage) 4. Приглашение посетить его так и не пришло, (invitation) 5. Какой смысл оставаться у них дольше? (point) 6. Когда он выступал, он производил впечатление, что он нервничает к неловко себя чувствует, (impression) 7. Я получил разрешение взять эту книгу, чтобы выучить стихотворение, (permission) 8. У него была привычка засиживаться до поздней ночи, (habit) 9. В колледже у меня выработалась привычка вести дневник, (habit) 10. В феврале он уехал на восток с намерением продать свое дело и поселиться в Нью-Йорке, (intention) 11. Я испытывал удовлетворение, видя, что Бетти чувствовала себя все более неловко, (satisfaction) 12. Но я всегда испытывал страх, что сделаю не то. (fear) 13. Он перестал притворяться, что упаковывается, (pretence) 14. В тот день не было никакой возможности пойти погулять, (possibility) 15. И, конечно, у тебя есть право сказать «нет» любому из них. (right) 16. У меня совсем нет никакого права спрашивать тебя, (right) 17. У матери не было никакого желания идти на кухню, (desire) 18. Он видел ее инстинктивное желание положить каждую вещь на отведенное ей место, (desire) 19. Утром шел дождь, и она отказалась от всякой надежды пойти в бассейн, (hope) 20. Нет никакой надежды устроить с ним интервью до его отплытия, (hope) 21. Он отказался от идеи позвонить по телефону, (idea) 22. Мысль о расставании никогда не приходила нам в голову, (idea) 23. Я был в отчаянии от мысли, что могу потерять работу, (thought) 24. Я просто не могу вынести мысли, что не буду видеть тебя каждый день, (thought) 25. Ее решение найти работу было вполне твердым, (decision) 26. Поль не сделал

никакой попытки поговорить, (attempt) 27. Я думаю, что она не стала бы приветствовать попытку с моей стороны возобновить знакомство, (attempt) 28. Я сделал большое усилие быть спокойным, (effort) 29. Она видела, что я смотрю на нее, но не сделала никакого усилия, чтобы встать, (effort) 30. У него был дар видеть вещи, как они есть, (gift)

Ex. 51. Supply prepositions other than 'of' for the ing -forms used as attributes in the following sentences:

1. She had great difficulty ... not showing her feelings. 2. She looked upon life as an opportunity ... writing novels. 3. «There doesn't seem to be much point ... my coming down if he's not well,» said Lou. 4. There isn't much sense ... my going through all the reasons why a young man of twenty-two, without any money, should not marry. 5. Blair raised no objection ... going back to London. 6. She has a wonderful talent ... getting the best out of people. 7. The girl took a biscuit in her tiny hand and made a feeble attempt ... gnawing it. 8. Mel saw their social life as a means ... fulfilling his professional ambitions. 9. There could be no doubt ... there being something on between her and Hugh. 10. For one reason or another there was difficulty ... finding an evening when we were both free. 11. She had a pleasant gift ... keeping the conversation general. 12. I'm a great believer ... being prepared. 13. She cherished her delight ... calling a woman of title by her Christian name. 14. I repeat, that was one of my reasons ... giving you this news today.

Ex. 52. Translate the following into English using ing -forms as attributes of appositive meaning to nouns requiring other prepositions than 'of':

1. Я с трудом открыл дверь из-за массы газет и писем, лежавших на полу, (difficulty) 2. Он никогда не испытывал трудности в том, чтобы найти работу или получить субсидию на научные исследования, (difficulty) 3. Не было никакого смысла сидеть в комнате целый день, (sense) 4. У меня есть основания для того, чтобы хотеть сохранить этот дом. (reason) 5. Я знал, что моей хозяйки еще не будет дома, так что не имело смысла идти домой до того, как пора будет спать, (point) 6. Вэл не имел особых возражений против того, чтобы его видели с Эллиен, (objection) 7. Ему хотелось скрыть смущение, которое он чувствовал, когда произносил речь, (embarrassment) 8. Устроить это интервью будет нетрудно, (difficulty) 9. Он старался скрыть свое удовольствие, когда ему предложили работу, (pleasure) 10. У меня была одна ясная причина не делать этого, (reason)

Ex. 53. State the doer of the actions expressed by the ing -forms used as attributes:

1. She could think of no way of explaining it. 2. Cedric had explained to me the reason for Jack's taking a scientific degree. 3. There ought to be no danger of anything happening. 4. It is asserted that the idea of marrying her never entered his head. 5. I didn't like the idea of Herbert being thrown into contact with a lot of rough boys. 6. There was the sound of the piano being played. 7. The curtness of the message, the fact of its being written at all, meant trouble. 8. It was never anything but a question of his staying at home or my going with him. 9. If there is a chance of saving them it's your duty to try. 10. An urgent sense of being late caught me up.

Ex. 54. Translate the following into English using *ing*-forms as attributes of appositives meaning and be careful to choose the best suited way of indicating the doer of the actions expressed by these *ing*-forms:

1. Есть какие-нибудь возражения против того, чтобы я повидал его? - А почему бы им быть? (objection) 2. Я не мог вынести мысли, что она так несчастлива и так далеко, (thought) 3. Хотя она всегда была лучшей ученицей в своем классе, не было и речи о том, что она пойдет в колледж, (question) 4. Его план включал необходимость для Барта оставаться в Европе в качестве управляющего, (necessity) 5. Было мало шансов, что он останется жить после операции, (chance) 6. Даже теперь мысль о том, что он разговаривал с ней, странно трогала его. (thought) 7. Как ты думаешь, есть какая-нибудь возможность, что нам поверят? (chance) 8. Его чуткие уши уловили звук приближающейся моторной лодки, (sound) 9. Сейчас есть реальная опасность, что эпидемия широко распространится, (danger) 10. Мне отвратительна мысль, что ты там совсем одна, (idea) 11. На минуту наступила тишина, нарушаемая только -звуком воды, текущей из крана, (sound) 12. Для него не было никакой возможности получить стипендию в Оксфордском университете, (chance)

Ex. 55. Finish off the following sentences in your own way using infinitive phrases:

1. They realize that they have not the power to 2. She hasn't the guts to 3. I never thought you'd have the courage to ... 4. She has the insolence to 5. She did not have the heart to 6. Do you know what he had the nerve to 7. He was very tired and not sure that he could find the energy even to 8. I never had the skill to 9. They ought to have the wit and strength to 10. He lacked the courage to 11. His father was too much of a businessman to 12. I doubt whether he had enough money to 13. I have the power to 14. Tears streamed down her cheeks, and she did not have the wit to... .

Ex. 56. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing*-form to use it as an attribute to a noun in sentences with a formal 'it' functioning as subject or object:

1. «We make it a rule,» he explained, «... no information concerning our clients.» (to give) 2. I made it my business ... him everything, (to teach) 3. Oh, what's the use ... over what he said? (to go) 4. I told Ann that it was a mistake ... the invitation, (to decline) 5. It's no use ... around moaning, (to sit) 6. She found it a relief... it up with me. (to make) 7. He said he knew it had been no good ... her about it. (to ask) 8. I feel that it's my duty ... at his side, (to be) 9. It's no use ... and ... to things if she is ill. (she, to get up, to see) 10. You'll find it a great change ... in New York, (to live) 11. He was strong and healthy and it was a pleasure ... from street to street delivering letters, (he, to walk) 12. I make it a principle ... with people like you. (to work) 13. I made it a rule ... both routes, coming down and going up. (to use) 14. I'll be going abroad soon. So it's no use ... or (you, to write, to telephone) 15. It was our custom ... for some few minutes after the lights were out. (to talk) 16. It's the dream of my life ... for a film star, (to take) 17. I don't think it's a very good idea ... him of it. (to remind) 18. But it was no use ... as if I didn't care, (to sound) 19. I felt it my duty ... the argument, (to end) 20. It was a very unfortunate remark (he, to make)

Ex. 57. Revision: supply infinitives or ing -forms for the following sentences:

1. It was quite late when they saw Trasker ... up the other side of the street. They saw him ... in front of his house, ... up at it and ... his cigarette away, (to come, to pause, to look, to throw) 2.... the truth, he felt disgusted with himself, (to tell) 3. Even when my mother was alive it was considered ... a great extravagance ... to a hotel for dinner, (to be, to go) 4. Meg was not much surprised in the morning ... that her uncle was too unwell ..., though he hoped ... his work in the afternoon, (to learn, to appear, to resume) 5. He knew that he ought to feel ashamed ... on ... his father's money when he made no effort ... himself, but it did not seem ... and he just went on (to keep, to take, to support, to matter, to sketch) 6. I love you so much that I still can't stop my heart ... fast when I see you ... something as ordinary as ... the table, (to beat, to do, to lay) 7.... on the deck Father surveyed the passengers ... up the gangway, (to stand, to come) 8. He insisted upon her ... a maid ... in three afternoons a week ... with the cleaning and ironing, (to have, to come, to help) 9. He thought of ... out and ... a note to his wife ... that he had been called away, (to go, to leave, to say) 10.... frank, it is a great shock to me. (to be) 11. Smith got into the car and slammed the door. Barber watched him ... sharply away from the curb, ... a taxi -driver behind him ... on his brakes (to pull, to make, to jam, to avoid, to butt) 12. Barbara sat beside him She heard him ... and put out a sisterly hand... his hair. «It's terribly cold,» she said. «I wonder if it would be any good on the gas boiler.» (to read, to sigh, to touch, to try, to turn) 13. In the darkness I heard footsteps ... toward me. Quickly I began ... a cigarette, for the thought of someone ... into me filled me with alarm, (to come, to light, to bang) 14. He talked about the difficulty of ... history readable without ... it into fiction, (to make, to turn) 15. Michael drove very slowly towards the ... troops, (to approach) 16. He had trouble ... his way and several times came close to (to find, to lose) 17. He wanted Francis ... about it, yet he also wanted him. (to know, to avoid, to tell) 18. «Write her a letter then.» «Why ... that, when she's upstairs?» (to do) 19. I was worried, but found it difficult ... what ... for him. (to know, to do) 20. When I refused ... she sulked, but then she began ... that she would enjoy ... alone for a change, (to stay, to think, to be) 22. «Why not ... a gentleman and ... thank you for the offer?» she said, (to be, to say) 23. «It's no good ... a fool of myself,» she said, ... her eyes. «The only thing is ... what is the best thing ... » (to make, to dry, to decide, to do) 23. Casie spent most of her life ... her ailing mother, (to tend) 24. She turned to the window and threw it open. «Why ... that?» he said sharply. «You'll catch cold in that dress.» (to do) 25. His impulse was ... from the room, but he restrained himself, (to rush)

Ex. 58. Revision: supply infinitive or ing -form complexes for the following sentences:

Note: Find, if necessary, the right way of introducing the complex into the sentence.

1. There was obviously no hope ... quiet until he knew how they had found him. (the man - to be) 2. There was nothing more annoying to Freddy than the sight ... mistakes, (his students - to make) 3. He didn't like the idea ... him like that, (people - to see) 4. He had the impression on his face... ... (a man - to wait, a bomb - to go off) 5. There is no chance ... away with it. (he -to get) 6. What had driven him from the house was the sound (his child - to cry) 7. He thought it was wrong ... away, and ... his mother to look after his children, (he -to go, to leave) 8.1 don't even know the man. I've heard

... about him from time to time, but that's all. (you - to talk) 9. You know one can't expect ... easy in war time, (things - to be) 10. I continued to work there on the subjects which were necessary ... into Cambridge. (I - to get) 11. The Cabinet decided to advise ... an independent commission, (the Governor - to appoint) 12. I made ... up and ... and ... (he - to get, to wash, to dress) 13. She lay listening to the sound ... down the stairs. (Mary's steps - to retreat) 14. He stood there letting ... by. (the seconds - to tick) 15. I thought it would be useful ... what I could about my father's intentions. (I - to find out)

Ex. 59. Revision: *supply infinitives and ing -forms for the following texts:*

I. Saturday. It was the day on which he had promised ... his landlady, (to pay) He had expected something ... up all through the week, (to turn) Yet he had found no work. All he could do now was ... her that he could not pay the bill, (to tell) But he hadn't the courage ... the woman, (to face).

It was the middle of June. The night was warm. He made up his mind ... out. (to stay) ... down the Embankment, he kept ... to himself that he had always tried ... what he thought best, but everything had gone wrong, (to walk, to say, to do) He was ashamed of ... so many lies to his friends, (to tell) It had been absurd ... his pride ... him from ... for assistance, (to let, to prevent, to ask) Now his lies made it impossible for him ... to anyone for help, (to turn) But it was no good ... about it. (to think)

II. When my sister Anne was six years old, I saved her from (to kidnap) At the end of the war there were rumors about strange men who lured little children into quiet places with] promises of toys and sweets, persuaded them into ... about their parents and if the parents turned out... of no further interest to them, they usually left the children ... their way home in tears, (to talk, to be, to find) So my parents spent a great deal of time ... Anne about ... to strange men. (to warn, to talk) One day, Anne went out ... in the street after tea and could not be found an hour later, (to play) We looked through . . . the streets, but no one had seen her. (to surround) My father went off in the car... for her, and I decided ... in the park, (to look, to search) Some boys there told me that they had seen a small girl in a blue dress ... a cricket match, and someone else said that she had been seen ... off with a man who was pushing a bicycle, (to watch, to walk) The chances were against this child ... my sister, but I walked off in the direction in which they had been seen... . (to be, to walk) This brought me to a back alley. I called Anne's name, and was surprised ... her voice ... back, (to hear, to call) I found a hole in the hedge, and as I scrambled through she came ... towards me. (to run) I was in time ... a youth ... over the fence, (to see, to climb) He grinned and waved at me and said, «Can't stop» and dropped on the other side.

Anne and I walked home; she was not in the least excited about her exploit. She had walked into the park with two girl friends, ... for butterflies, had watched a cricket match, and had then got into conversation with «a nice man», who told her he knew where she could catch butterflies, (to look) He took her into the alley,... her stories as they walked along, (to tell)

I warned her about ... to strange men but she insisted on this man ... «quite nice», (to talk, to be) I agreed that this was probably so, but made her ... that, in future, she would never again accept an invitation ... for butterflies, (to promise, to look)

III. When the maid had gone, and I was almost alone, I sat down on the kitchen chair and started (to cry) I sat there ... and ... and ... how ... myself, (to shake, to gasp, to wonder, to stop) My little daughter Flora came ... what I was doing, (to see) I attempted ... myself together. (to pull) I got up and thought of ... myself a cup of coffee, (to make) I put the milk in the pan. Then I went to the frig ... the milk -bottle back, and I did not look where I was going, for I fell over one of Flora's bricks, (to put) I dropped the bottle and it broke and splintered all over the floor. At the sight of it I started ... again, (to cry) Flora came ... towards me and threw her arms about my knees, (to stumble)

«It's all right, Flora.» I kept ... as I unclasped her hands, and started ... up the lumps of glass, (to repeat, to pick) I persuaded her ... down while I tried ... the milk with the floor cloth, (to sit, to wipe) I was damp with milk and tears. Flora clung to me, ... ; (to sob) When I cleaned the floor, I picked her up and went to the bathroom ... myself, (to wash) I tried... of someway of... the afternoon and decided ... to the launderette with all the things that I never bother ... in the machine at home, like bedspreads and dressing -gowns, (to think, to spend, to go, to wash) Flora insisted on my ... her along with me. (to take)

In the launderette a girl I knew stopped for a moment (to chat) She said something about the washing at home ... her so tired, and two and ninepence ... an awful lot of money, (to make, to be) I listened and agreed but I also realized that she was apologizing to me for ... thereat all, as the launderette was not to her a place of duty, but a place of lazy, extravagant luxury which she could not afford (to be, to visit) She was embarrassed as though I had caught her ... her hair done at an expensive hairdresser's, or ... cream cakes alone in a tea shop, (to have, to eat)

Ex. 60. *Find various signs of adjectivization with the participles used as predicatives in the following sentences:*

1. Freddy felt very relieved. 2. Finch looked suddenly detached, lost in his own thoughts. 3. I was greatly annoyed with Monica for interfering. 4. I could not get used to things changing like this. 5. Jim got too depressed to listen to their talk. 6. I was quite prepared for a disagreeable surprise. 7. Well, I must say you're not very fitted for accountancy. 8. I looked at him as if I were surprised to see him there. 9. I did not feel inclined for guessing -games. 10. You bet I'm burning myself out. I've been doing it for so many years now -and who cares? At this moment I feel quite played out. 11. She was not so convinced as she tried to sound. 12. It was their last reception before Easter and the house was even more crowded than usual.

Ex. 61. *State the functions of the participles in the following sentences:*

1. The doll lay deserted on the porch. 2. I had heard these topics argued between the scientists for years. 3. Dogs have often been seen killed on the road. 4. Rex assured her that the blind man was quite peaceful if left undisturbed. 5. Friendship restored, we walked along together. 6. By the look of it the watch must have lain buried in the sand for quite a few days. 7. Seeing our afternoon broken, Margaret and I were cross. 8. But what if he had his money stolen? 9. With an effort I took up the diary again and turned the closely written pages. 10. The plant has withered because it was left exposed to the sun. 11. She sat down on a fallen tree to do the Times cross -word puzzle. 12. As I was

busy finishing the article, I got the new fellow sent instead of me. 13. The probability is that there won't be anything left to wait for. 14. He sat straight in his bed with his feet tucked under him. 15. It was only a couple of pages, typed in triple spacing on one of the large -letter machines, as though specially designed for long -sighted elderly men. 16. He felt a curious relief at the delay and at the fact that whether sent or not the letter was written. 17. He knew they were both men trained to discretion. 18. Bernard found himself compelled to read and give his opinion on one or two books. 19. Seated at his desk, Mel put his head in his hands. 20. The dog was found tied to a tree.

Ex. 62. Translate the following into English using participles as objective predicatives:

1. Мне пришлось прождать два часа в больнице, чтобы мне запломбировали зуб. (to have) 2. Я слышал, как в связи с этим упоминалось его имя. (to hear) 3. Она с шумом задвинула ящик стола, (to slam) 4. Я оставил жену вполне обеспеченной, (to leave) 5. Все эти годы я хранил их письма под замком, (to keep) 6. Он был полон решимости заставить уважать себя, (to make) 7. Я не мог допустить, чтобы моего единственного сына исключили из колледжа, (to have) 8. Когда они подошли к дому, они увидели оставленный перед ним бьюик, (to see) 9. Ты мог бы добиться, чтобы его уволили, (to get) 10. Ему было досадно, когда он услышал, что имя его жены упоминается перед незнакомым человеком, (to hear) 11. Было тяжело видеть его побежденным. (to see) 12. Я полагаю, что у твоей матери все цыплята были пересчитаны каждый вечер, (to have) 13. О чем ты хочешь меня предупредить? - О том, что ты окажешься в положении человека, о котором все говорят, (to find oneself) 14. Он сказал ей, что нельзя заполнить бланк без предварительного заявления, (to have) 15. Если бы он сделал это, он мог бы оказаться отрезанным от своей семьи, (to find oneself) 16. Я знал, что могу ему помочь только, если буду держать язык за зубами, (to keep) 17. В нашем доме невозможно добиться, чтобы что-нибудь было сделано, (to get) 18. Они хотели, чтобы комитет был созван в понедельник, (to want) 19. Мы хотим, чтобы кое о чем была договоренность, (to get) 20. Он видел, что в плане их общественного положения ученые были разделены на две неравные группы, (to see)

Ex. 63. Supply the appropriate conjunctions for the participles used as adverbial modifiers in the following sentences:

1. He had never been known to refuse to see a patient at any hour, or to fail to make a house call ... sent for. 2. The furniture was to be stored in Quebec ... sent for. 3. She has the heart of a tigress ... roused. 4. A re-check, ... decided on, would take most of half an hour. 5.... told to go, Maxwell hesitated at the door. 6.... released, he told me of his trouble. 7. He remembered that he should not smoke ... invited to do so. 8. «I suppose you understand you would have to go to Canada ... engaged,» he went on. 9. Lamont bowed to him ... introduced. 10. So I went back to Kathy's place ... directed. 11. She stopped in the doorway ... surprised to see me sitting there. 12.... ordered two weeks ago, the books haven't been delivered yet. 13.... starved for exercise, he usually began to scrape the sidewalks with a shovel. 14.... bored with a book, I find it difficult to leave it unfinished.

Ex. 64. Translate the following into English using participles as attributes:

1. Мэри села на упавший ствол дерева. 2. Оркестр, видимый на экране телевизора в гостиной, исполнял музыку Моцарта. 3. Дети играли в разрушенном коттедже. 4. Там было шесть коробок, туго завернутых в старые газеты. 5. Она подошла к письменному столу и вынула запечатанный конверт. 6. Женщина вышла из магазина и пошла к машине, оставленной чуть ниже по улице. 7. Вернувшись в комнату, она позвонила по телефону. 8. Упавшие листья спокойно лежали в пруду. 9. Оставшись один, я огляделся. 10. Застигнутые врасплох, они не знали, что сказать. 11. У меня были свои собственные определенные взгляды на мое будущее. 12. В коробке было несколько негативов, свернутых в тугий виток.

Ex. 65. Revision: choose the appropriate verbal to use it in the function of objective predicative in the following sentences:

1. I don't want to see anyone (to hurt) 2. Roger gave such a boisterous laugh that I saw other people ... towards our table, (to glance) 3. Jeff smiled, slowly letting the door (to close) 4. Diana had the table ... on. (to lay) 5. The sight of the man made him ... his mind, (to change) 6. One man had got himself... in the accident, (to kill) 7. Light was coming through in the corner room, and he could hear a piano (to play) 8. Everyone talked a little louder than natural in an instinctive desire to make the party (to go) 9. There are people who would like to see him ... a fair chance, (to give) 10. I did not expect the issue ... the tragic form it did. (to take) 11. The picture always left me ... sad. (to feel) 12. I have often heard it (to say) 13. The judge did not like witnesses ... jokes, (to make) 14. I came to tell you ... him while there's time, (to find) 15. I'll have someone ... on to keep a watch on the house, (to put) 16. Even his mother could not stop him ... that, (to do) 17. She could not bring herself ... that she feared she might lose him. (to say) 18. He had to force himself ... his uncle, (to visit) 19. I want a telegram ... at once, (to send) 20. She then explained why she had asked me ... on that night, (to call) 21. It was easy to imagine Kate ... silent, (to sit) 22. Next morning he got his cheque (to cash) 23. Suddenly they saw him ... his temper and were uncomfortable, (to lose) 24. In fact I found myself ... that I would have to do something about it immediately, (to think) 25. Then I saw Rose... out on Roger's arm, an impressive smiling couple, (to walk)

Ex. 66. Revision: choose the appropriate verbal to use it as an attribute in the following sentences:

1. She looked at a ... photograph of Jimmy, (to frame) 2. John busied himself with the complex problems of a ... city, (to grow) 3. There were infrequent visitors and her books ... her occupied, (to keep) 4. In the room there were four men ... over their coffee, (to chat) 5. In the theatre there was always a seat ... for him. (to reserve) 6. Late at night he received a telegram from his father ... him to come home at once, (to ask) 7. The Cotton Cooperative ... by his father to protect the cotton growers in the area, was expanded to include tobacco, (to found) 8. In the drawer he kept the envelopes ... his children's letters, (to contain) 9. He decided not to plant the fields because of the labor shortage ...by the war. (to create) 10. He outlined his plan ... the votes of the two men. (to obtain) 11. I found myself in the ... room, (to darken) 12. He accepted the invitation

... the matter, (to discuss) 13. People usually accept the emotions ... to the concept of home, (to attach) 14. The meeting of the Council ... by Jim Corbin two days later was a particularly stormy one. (to call) 15. He received permission ... up the unkempt grassy lawn, (to clean) 16. She wondered every day at that folly, already ... into the past, (to recede) 17. They were reluctant to fill out the small forms ... the expenses they had made, (to describe) 18. I helped him in handling problems ... by other departments, (to create) 19. I made one ... remark after another in an effort ... friendly, (to joke, to be) 20. I know I won't be able to think of a single intelligent thing ... in reply, (to say) 21. I smiled with relief when I saw it was my brother ... on the grass, (to lie) 22. In the telephone I heard the ... announcement of the time, (to record) 23. Every two weeks we are paid with machine -processed checks.... out of stiff paper, (to manufacture) 24. He left a note ... he was sorry, (to say) 25. He made a few ... jokes, (to tease)

Ex. 67. Revision: supply the appropriate verbals for the following sentences:

1. They stared at each other, Dan still ... with his tea cup and Willy ... out in the chair, (to stand, to stretch) 2. While... for a flight, and without ever ... the terminal, a visitor could have his hair ..., suit ... and shoes (to wait, to leave, to cut, to press, to shine) 3. The snow never stopped ... that afternoon. It was dreadful ... outdoors, (to fall, to be) 4. Then we strolled round the place ... preparations up the tent. (to watch, to make, to set) 5. The door did not open. She left off..., and, ... down at the top of the stairs, buried her face in her hands, (to ring, to sit) 6. The thought came ... into his mind, (to flash) 7.... them in so short a time would have been next to impossible, (to find) 8. She took up the egg -cup and held it to the light ... if it might be tarnished a little. Then she set about ... the egg. (to see, to chip) 9. I spent some time with Tom ... maps of the country, (to study) 10. He was accustomed to ... through the morning noises of the neighborhood, (to sleep) 11.... the confusion that followed would be impossible, (to describe) 12. He was beyond ... about what was going to happen to him. (to care) 13. She could not help ... into her conversation the names of people she knew, (to bring) 14. The state I'm in I'm liable ... out (to burst, to cry) 15. It is true that... is ... and (to understand, to pity, to forgive) 16. I sat... at him. (to gaze) 17. «I cannot see what my ... three times has to do with my books,» she said, (to divorce) 18. He walked down the street, not...where ... or what.... (to know, to turn, to do) 19. At the top of the third flight she paused for breath, and ... on to the banisters, stood(to hold, to listen) 20. Bob glanced away from his mother so as not ...the tears in her eyes, (to see) 21. The girl was only four but it delighted us ... with her. (to talk) 22. I had seen too many examples of the process not ... it now. (to recognize) 23.... gradually his small fortune, he preferred ... on the generosity of others rather than (to waste, to live, to work) 24. She tried ... on ... with me, but I finally managed... her out of it. (to insist, to come, to talk) 25. I've seen many a man ...through ... extravagant habits, (to ruin, to have) 26. She woke at half -past ten in the morning ... her husband (to find, to go) 27. They said that Roger had been known ... her between five and seven in the evening, on the dates ... down, (to visit, to set) 28. When Hugh came in he found the painter ... the ... touches to a picture of a beggar -man. The beggar himself was standing on a ... platform in a corner of the studio. He was an old man, with a face like ... parchment, (to put, to finish, to raise, to wrinkle) 29. There were several ships ... in the harbor, (to anchor) 30. Since then I've made a point of ... with the largest sack ...for linen and

... it to the brim with books ... every possible occasion and every mood, (to travel, to make, to carry, to soil, to fill, to suit)

Nouns

Ex. 1. Explain the formation and the pronunciation of the plural form of the nouns in the following text:

As we sailed up the River Hudson towards the cities of New York and Brooklyn, we experienced a sensation which is, I think, common to all travelers who come to the end of their voyage. Many people have tried to analyze this emotion, and I have read many such analyses but none have ever really satisfied me.

The buildings stood out against the skyline like enormous boxes of matches stuck on end. The houses and churches were completely dwarfed by them. As we went up the river, we examined it all with our glasses. It seemed as if each building brushed the skies.

There were a lot of ships in the river mouth. They were bringing cargoes from all over the world -cargoes of meat and potatoes and mangoes, of machines and toys and many other things. They carried silks from China and teas from India as well. They flew the colors of almost every seafaring nation on the globe.

Armies of customs -officials, port -authorities and others, came on board. The passengers were paraded before the port doctor. He was a huge fat man. The first class passengers filed before him as solemn as oxen. Most of the third class passengers stood waiting their turn as quiet as mice, though some were as noisy as a flock of geese. They carried their savings in knotted handkerchiefs, and the rest of their belongings in bundles. Many seemed to have completely lost their bearings in their new and strange surroundings and seemed as bewildered as sheep, while their wives and children stared around like startled deer.

There seemed to be varying criteria for the treatment of passengers by the immigration authorities, according to the class in which they traveled. Those of the third were examined for lice and other vermin, regardless of their feelings. And if a single louse was found, the individual was taken to Ellis Island, where there were plenty of delousing apparatuses. Our American brethren do nothing by halves, and do not care sixpence for anybody's opinions of their methods.

We landed with every manifestation of high spirits and the customs people examined our effects. The hangers -on stared at us as though we were curious phenomena.

On the day we landed, the news got around that an armistice had been signed, and New York was beside itself with joy. Nobody then guessed how many world crises would follow in the years to come; and what small consolation there would be for the men who had performed their duties like heroes in «a war to end war».

Ex. 2. Choose between a singular or a plural verb to use it in the following sentences:

1. We were at the head of the valley and below us we saw an old house. «This is where my family (to live),» he said. 2. Con's family (to be) in the process of having tea when

we arrived. 3. All the family (to be) gathered to see the dog. 4. My family who (to be) occupied each with their particular guest did not notice anything. 5. Monty's family (to be) of about the same social status as my own. 6. When the family (to be) alone she often read to them before going to bed. 7. Do you know what the family (to get) into their heads about this business? 8. The police (to know) about him for years. 9. Everybody says the Swiss police (to be) great at finding people. 10. The police (to be) not fools. That man did not believe a word of what I said. 11. The police (to call) and a sergeant and a constable arrived. 12. The public (not to think) so. 13. The public (to request) not to leave litter in these woods. 14. As Alan appeared, the crew had quit their loading and (to be) assembled along the rail. 15. There (to be) two fish in his basket. 16. That evening the net was so heavy that he could hardly draw it into the boat. «Surely I have caught all the fish that (to swim),» he said to himself and laughed. 17. When he came the baseball team (to practice) on the school field. 18. The team (to have) baths at the moment and then (to come) back here for tea. 19. The team (to play) tomorrow morning. 20. The summons (to be) already overdue. 21. My trousers now (to clean). 22. Do you know what the news (to be)? 23. The ashes (to be) still hot. 24. The job is unpaid, but a number of persons (to be) willing to undertake it. 25. There (to be) important information in the letter. 26. The clergy (to be) generally dressed in black. 27. The Government (to discuss) the matter for a long time but they have shown no signs of reaching agreement. 28. The Government (to decide) to pass the bill. 29. He was reserved concerning himself but a fluent talker when politics (to be) under discussion. 30. Politics always (to interest) me. 31. Ethics (to be) a difficult study. 32. The company (to find) shelter from the rain in the village inn. They are going to have lunch there. 33. In the meantime the young couple (to be) to live in the old house. 34. That day the committee (to be) to meet at her friend's house. 35. I had to find out whether the committee (to be) competent enough to consider the project.

Ex. 3. State the kind of the genitive case that is used in the following sentences:

1. He did not want to impose his sorrow on his friends' pleasure. 2. Wormwood Shrubs is a first offenders' prison. 3. The estate where they were to spend the week-end belonged to a cousin of Andrew's. 4. Otto turned up at Arthur's about a week later. 5. It was Robin's turn now to be annoyed with what he felt to be the boy's stubbornness. 6. Annie turned great frightened doll's eyes upon him. 7. In stressing her mother-in-law's peasant origin she found it easier to disregard her. 8. A professor's life is little better than a high-grade clerk's nowadays. 9. She did not ask him anything because she knew a sister's place. 10. The street had not changed. There was the baker's at the corner, and there was the butcher's with the gilt ox head on the signboard. 11. I'm sure you know far more than they do about their country's history. 12. The sun's rays refracted in an intense glare from the chalk-white cliffs. 13. He looked expectantly at Maria, but she dilated her camel's nostrils slightly and said: «I don't give blank cheques.» 14. It was a habit of John's not to tell you things and then assume that you knew all about them.

Ex. 4. Translate the following into English choosing between a noun in the genitive case and an of -phrase:

1. Ее кукольное лицо выражало возрастающее раздражение. 2. Он прошел через

комнату секретарши, не глядя на нее. 3. Я провел неделю в гостях у друга моей матери, который живет в Лондоне. 4. Женский голос позади меня тихо произнес мое имя. 5. Это было решение человека, которому уже исполнилось тридцать лет. 6. В сегодняшней вечерней газете есть длинная статья Питера об этом. 7. Джеральд поднял брови. «У тебя очень странные взгляды на роль отца», - сказал он. 8. На следующее утро я дала ребенку его первую бутылочку коровьего молока. 9. «Я не буду есть рыбу», - сказал Роберт с важностью старшего ребенка. 10. Боюсь, что мы опоздаем к Джону. 11. Наступило минутное молчание. 12. Он имел обыкновение говорить о своей профессии как о собачьей жизни. 13. После университета в течение года или двух она преподавала в хорошей женской школе на севере Англии. 14. Он никогда не забудет доброты своего друга. 15. Это был дом местного доктора, который был активным членом клуба. 16. До его работы было только несколько минут ходьбы. 17. Он отправился в аптеку. 18. Тон его голоса был очень добрым. 19. Она удивилась ответу молодого человека на ее вопрос относительно обязанностей его отца. 20. Хозяин дома не живет в нем, но он иногда приезжает сюда на день или два. 21. Что могло бы быть более естественным, чем желание матери знать что-нибудь о молодом человеке, с которым встречается ее дочь? 22. Интерес больного к этому журналу легко объяснить. 23. У меня нет сомнения относительно личности человека, который живет по соседству. 24. Ее описание положения вещей не добавило никаких новых фактов. 25. У него было знание города, присущее таксисту.

Articles

Ex. 1. Explain the functions of the articles or their absence with the nouns in the following sentences:

1. He gave me a message for you. 2. The road past the church was quiet. 3. «Is it true?» «Oh, no. It's pure imagination.» 4. Only the poet or the saint can water an asphalt pavement in the confident anticipation that lilies will reward his labor. 5. I was quick to weave fantasies with my mother, to build houses and furnish them, and give her motorcars and furs. 6. All available chairs were occupied, and at least a hundred people were standing. 7. He closed his eyes. A peculiar weariness came over him. 8. Just about everybody in the town is chasing the dollar so hard that they only have time to breathe on Sundays. 9. I call it a very mediocre play. 10. I liked pleasure and good things. 11. My mother died in May. From the cemetery, my father and I returned to the empty house. 12. He wanted to hide the embarrassment he felt at making this speech. 13. With a frankness which brought color to her cheeks he said, «I suppose you mean me.» 14. She looked in her handbag for an envelope. 15. He thinks it's pure nerves and he's given me pills. You'd better hope that the pills do some good. 16. Peter was alone at home, enjoying the solitude and the freedom of the empty house. 17. You've never bought a car yet, are you? 18. My mother liked to wait until it was quite dark before we lit the gas and drew the blinds. 19. I don't know how to talk to children. 20. We sat round the table in the kitchen. There was cold meat, cheese, bowl of tinned pears, jam -tarts, and a jug of cream. 21. She put down the cup and got up.

22. There was not a cloud in the sky. 23. The big table was covered with texts and notebooks. 24. She answered a soft tap at the door and a maid came in with a tray which she set on the table.

Ex. 2. Say whether the attributes, expressed by various parts of speech, are limiting or descriptive in the following sentences and whether they affect the use of articles with the countable nouns therein:

1. «The injured man does not understand our language», he said and walked off to find an English doctor. 2. Number 39 was the house with the plain green grass bordered by a rockery. 3. He politely avoided all invitations from professional acquaintances. 4. The three thin cracked notes of the gong floated into the garden inviting us to dinner. 5. She said good -bye to me and started at a great pace up the chalky footpath. 6. I think that that is the wrong point of view. 7. To the little girl he was a figure to be feared and avoided. 8. I took the opportunity of talking with my father for a moment. 9. She felt, as usual, confident that she had done the right thing and that this was the only conceivable course for me. 10. My mother was capable but preoccupied, my father took it for granted that she was the stronger character and never made more than a comic pretense of interfering at home. 11. He shook his head and said: «Well, I suppose young men must have their fling.» 12. I couldn't explain to myself the stunned look in her face. 13. His church does not allow him a second wife. 14. Then he told me in a trembling voice what had happened. 15. He said he would give me the job on the usual terms. 16. He came in, batting short-sighted eyes in the bright room. 17. Mrs. Davis sent me a note asking if I could go and see her that evening. 18. He had left his wife in the car and walked to the nearest telephone box. 19. Last night I looked at Henry when he was working. 20. She stood at the very top of the long outer staircase looking down into the dark courtyard. 21. He opened the door and saw two men standing on the doorstep. 22. She had missed the chance to leave him and he knew it. 23. It was not an occasion made for drama. 24. I am going myself to see the various people involved. 25. To divert her, I arranged to take her to a concert the following night. 26. We stood side by side on the dark and empty pavement. 27. On the third floor the door was open. 28. The old people had a chance of welcoming their nephew. 29. The so-called palace stood the test of time magnificently. 30. «We are a curious people,» he said to them.

Ex. 3. Supply the required articles for nouns used singly and nouns modified by attributes expressed by various parts of speech, in the following sentences:

1. I still keep wondering if I'm doing ... right thing. 2. We needed ... house to stay in when we were in London. 3. There are some things ... gentleman can't do, Phil. 4. Every day, the Marches told each other ... latest pieces of family gossip. 5. You are ... only person whose opinion is of any value to me in ... present regrettable circumstances. 6. He told her he hated ... doctors. 7. She had ... laughing eyes and ... most charming mouth. 8. They took all ... usual measures. 9. We talked about ... books. Charles had just finished ... last volume of Proust. 10. I went into ... room quietly and sat down opposite him without... word. 11. We all know that ... men under the influence of passion say ... things and make ... promises which in ... calmer moments they forget. 12. She had ... strong opinions on all ... subjects. 13. Mr. March spent most of the night talking to Francis about buying ... house. ... two of them were happy

discussing ... plans and ... prices. 14. I told myself that in wartime ... letters are lost. 15. He is ... man to deal with it. 16. She went to ... writing -desk and brought out ... sealed envelope. 17. I'll book ... sleeper on ... Geneva -Paris train for tomorrow night. 18.... second bell sounded, and Mr. March began to walk into ... theatre. 19. They never read anything but ... local paper, and ... local papers report ... London affairs in one line. 20. I now see for myself how ... things stand at home. 21. Well, there are ... hundred courses open for you to follow. 22. When he got back to ... hotel he took ... newspaper and considered at his leisure ... story on ... page two. 23. He didn't like ... idea of staying with them for ... other day. 24. She wrote to her mother that ... things were going well and that she was not to be anxious, 25. I had brought all my possessions in ... two old suitcases. 26. For ... first term we shared ... same desk at the school because our names came next to each other in ... list. 27. There was a time when I believed ... people went to ... parties to enjoy themselves. 28. I haven't ... chance of getting this job anyhow. 29. Bill came out to meet them, wiping his hands on ... oily rag. 30. He took ... crumpled telegram out of his pocket and flattened it out on his knee with great care and studied it.

Ex. 4. Translate the following into Russian paying special attention to the noun 'things':

1. It was likely that things were in better shape now. 2. Things had started to go wrong from the moment Monty arrived there. 3. «Things have taken an odd turn, haven't they?» he remarked in a meditative tone. 4. How are things generally, Ann? 5. When things look bad she sends for me. 6. He said he had an opportunity to think things over. 7. He resolved to go into the matter more deeply when things became more settled. 8. However, things seemed to be going from bad to worse.

Ex. 5. State the kind of the attributive clauses used in the following sentences:

1. That's a poem I learnt in the nursery, but I simply can't remember how it goes on. 2. He often had the feeling that he did not know her fully, that she was a stranger. 3. He had made a mistake which caused him to feel inept. 4. Mr. Knight would not speak to me for the simple reason that he felt hurt. 5. I dislike people who talk about their private lives. 6. He said: «I'm sorry I had to be late,» and sat in the armchair which had been preserved for him. 7. He told me of his duties in a manner that was friendly and a little fussy. 8. Henry hesitated a minute, then said: «I have the impression that you are not being frank with me.» 9. He was rather startled by the defiant stare with which she returned his look. 10. I had an uncomfortable feeling that he was laughing at me. 11. The local Indians are a people to whom the writer is sympathetic. 12. One had the impression that this was a duty on which he found it hard to keep his mind. 13. On the pavement, walking towards me, was Sheila. She was wearing a fur coat which made her look a matron. 14. Yet her daughter was marrying a man she liked. 15. I picked up the package she had dropped.

Ex. 6. Supply the required articles for the countable nouns modified by attributive clauses in the following sentences:

1. He began to climb ... stairs, which were dark and smelt of cats. 2. I read until breakfast time ... novel I had borrowed from Marion. 3. You don't have to go into ...

reasons why they hate each other. 4. What he said -reminded me of ... film I had seen. 5. The lieutenant offered Grey ... cigarette which he refused. 6. He was wearing ... tweed jacket with leather inserts at the elbows, which was ... thing that I had never seen before. 7. Charlotte did not like ... idea that Arthur could be better at anything than Joe was. 8. This was ... sentence that made sense but had no meaning. 9... questions Ann asked always seemed to be ... questions to which Paul knew the answers. 10. Stanley knows ... woman in Milford who might be persuaded to come out by bus once a week to clean the house. 11. She was not ... little girl he had known, but she was not yet a woman either. 12. Her eyes were really like searchlights, picking out ... things that no one else saw. 13... fact that he would have independent means made her feel relieved. 14. It was not ... job that he liked. 15. Without knowing her at all I got ... feeling that she was the strongest person in that family. 16. Her husband made her presents of ... books she did not read. 17. And then he put forward ... amazing suggestion that she should turn down the offer and settle in London. 18. She wanted to fill ... wine -glasses which she had received as a wedding present. 19. I liked reading in ... garden, which was several steps below the level of the yard. 20. I have ... impression that you don't trust me.

Ex. 7. Say which element of the combination 'noun + 's + noun' the article refers to in the following sentences:

1. They lived in a two -foot shelter just outside the officers' dug -out. 2, He was eager to see Dennis, who was at a boys' camp somewhere. 3. There were two old men there and they were taken to an old people's home. 4. They made a two hours' journey in a train which stopped at every station. 5. After a six months' period of drought it started raining every day.6.He was a tall young man with a sad clown's face under stiff red hair7.He returned the old woman's smile. 8. On the opposite side of the street was the Sharpes' old car. 9. She was a miner's widow. 10. Have you read Bob's new novel?

Ex. 8. Supply the required articles for nouns modified by other nouns in the genitive case:

1, He took ... doctor's arm and led him out of the room. 2. He went up to the third floor where ... assistants' office was located. 3. She lives in ... doll's house at the back of the garden. 4. That dog is a proper brute with strangers. I've known him bite clean through ... lady's stockings. 5. They were promised ... four days' rest. 6. With one hand on ... young man's shoulder, he went up the stairs. 7. She is out visiting ... neighbor's daughter. 8. Thirty years before she taught at ... smart girls' school. 9. He sat on the floor stroking ... cat's fur. 10. After ... two months' leave I was sent to ... Officers' Training Camp in Dorset. 11. In that mood I was unsuitable for attending ... parents' meeting at the school. 12. The scheme of study in ... Teachers' Training College is based upon compulsory and optional subjects. 13. The theatre had ... three weeks' ballet season. 14. Very early in my life I was taught not to believe ... girl's tears. 15. I was told by my friends not to believe ... girl's tears. 16. I stopped at the door to ... Holly's apartment. 17.... chief's remarks left me indifferent. 18. She spoke guardedly, and her green eyes veiled themselves like ... parrot's eyes. 19. «Is that Mr. Blair?» ... woman's voice asked in the telephone. 20. Then she leaped to one side as ... car's brakes screamed behind her.

Ex. 9. Supply the required articles for nouns modified by of -phrases:

1. She was drinking ... glass of orange juice. 2. My friend is ... man of culture and wide reading. 3. His voice was determined, ... lines of his face had grown harsh. 4. Tom sat down on ... edge of a log and looked at ... glassy surface of the lake. 5.... deposit of 5 pounds is payable by anyone who wishes to become ... reader of the library. 6. The college ordinary course was planned to run for ... full academic year of forty seven weeks. 7.... faint purring of a motor woke Julia the next morning. 8. «Come back in half an hour. I'll give you ... bottle of medicine,» said the doctor. 9. The lamplight made his skin ... color of red brick. 10. He found... orchid of peculiar rarity. 11. He remembered ... soothing effect of her words. 12. He was disturbed by. . .sound of a shot. 13. Willy leaned on... back of the chair. 14. He always disliked anybody as soon as he was appointed to. . .position of authority. 15. He always took... line of least resistance. 16. I should like ... glass of water. 17. My grandfather was ... man of force and intellect. 18. From the kitchen came ... singing of a kettle on the stove. 19. «I'll have ... cup of tea with you,» said my mother. 20. Heat up the water to ... temperature of 60° C. 21. Just then ... latch of the front door clicked, and my father came in. 22. From the sitting -room came ... chink of light beneath the door, and ... sound of whispers from my mother and her friends. 23. The wallpaper was dark blue with ... design of conventional flowers. 24. This machinery drills holes to ... depth of two miles, or even more. 25. The woman moved her chair slightly toward ... right side of the path.

Ex. 10. Revision: supply the required articles for countable nouns in the following sentences:

1.... girl from ... farm came once ... week to help clean ... house. 2. To them I must have appeared ... most undesirable visitor. 3. He sat down at... piano and played ... piece that he had played in the morning. «What does ... penniless person do in ... case like this?» Marion said. It's not ... story I could tell anyone else. 6.... car drove up to ...front of ... movie theatre. They got out. Jack looked up at ... poster in front of ... theatre.... poster advertised ... picture called «The Stolen Midnight». 7. «... only thing she lacked was ... daughter, and little Betty filled that gap,» the woman said. 8. For ... past hundred years ...parties at their house had been held according to ... same pattern. 9. They walked without speaking across ... lawn. 10. I know ... man who will lend me ... car. 11. His daughter is married to ... man who lives by his pen. 12.... midges were dancing over the water. Close to us ... reeds were high and lush, and on ... other side of ... stream ... bank ran up steeply, so that we seemed alone, alone in the ... hot still garden. 13. I got ... impression that he wanted to tell me something. 14. He merely said: «Ah, that's ... question nobody can answer, lad.» 15. Her people were too poor to provide her with ...' books and ... proper clothes. 16. Mr. March looked over ... trees at ... roofs and towers, all soft and opal grey in the moist sunlight. 17.... letter is supposed to make you see ... things in a different light. 18. He gave ... suspicious look to ... box I carried. 19. I found that they wanted me no more than they wanted ... company of... dog or ... cat. 20.... breeze blew some dead leaves onto ... terrace. 21. He tried to give ... impression that one word from him would be enough. 22. She herself was busy with ... gardening basket and ... gardening gloves. 23. Keeping in ... shadow of ... house, he crept to ... back door. 24. He was writing ... note for his wife when ... outer door swung

open, and ... short man of thirty came in. 25. Harvest was over. ... leaves were red and golden on ... trees. 26. He took ... cigar from his mouth and blew away ... long trail of smoke. 27.... things are getting out of hand. 28. He could not help liking ... tall graceful young man who was standing beside him. 29.... gates of ... sports ground stood open, and we walked along ... road, under ... chestnut trees. 30. He went to ... corner of ... room and gazed at... bookshelf. 31. I thought that English was ... language he had learnt from ... books. 32. You seem very fond of saying ... things behind my back. 33. There's hardly ... man among us who knows ... mountains as you do. 34. She sat on ... sofa, relating slowly and minutely ... plot of ... play which she had seen. 35. He drained his glass and set it down with ... air of... man who had come to ... decision. 36. Yet I knew that in ... sense my mother was vainer than her sister. 37. Williams stood in ... middle of ... room, with ... expression of ... child from whom ... sweet has been taken. 38. Finally she stopped him in front of ... small picture. In silence and for a long time they stood looking at... picture. It was... a very good picture. 39. There were ... three shelters on ... cliff between ... steps down to ... sea and ... lighthouse. 40. One winter afternoon she had been buying something in ... little antique shop in Curson Street. It was ... shop she liked. And ... man who kept ... shop was fond of serving her.

Ex. 11. Revision: *supply the required articles for countable nouns in the following text:*

... king was ... very learned person. Yet, when he saw me walk on ... two legs he thought I was ... kind of mechanism made by some clever artist. But when he heard my voice, and found that I could speak like ... person he was greatly astonished. He was not satisfied with ... story I told him of ... manner in which I had come into his kingdom. He thought that ... girl who found me and her father had taught me those words in order to sell me at ... better price. He sent for ... three great scholars who were then in ... country.... gentlemen, after they had examined me carefully, were of ... different opinions about me. However, after much argument, they agreed that I was only ... freak of nature. I was so small that I could not defend myself against ... other animals, they said, I could not run as fast as ... other animals, nor climb ... trees, not dig ... holes in ... earth to hide myself in. I was not ... dwarf, for ... queen's dwarf, ... smallest person ever known in ... kingdom, was nearly 30 feet high. They did not know what I was. Therefore I was ... freak of nature. Such ... conclusion would have satisfied ... philosophers of Europe who reason in ... same way. After they had told me about their conclusion, I begged for permission to say ... word or two. I told ... king that I came from ... country where there lived ... people of my size. ... animals, ... trees and ... houses were all in proportion. Therefore in my country I might be able to defend myself, and get food for myself. To this they only answered with ... smile of contempt.

Ex. 12. Revision: *supply the required articles for countable nouns in the following text:*

The teacher rode to ... place where ... small brook crossed ... road. ... few logs, laid side by side, formed ... bridge over... brook. This had always been considered ... haunted place, and as he approached it, his heart began to beat fast. He gave his horse ... kick; ... animal rushed forward but stopped just by ... bridge so suddenly that he nearly flew over ... horse's head. On ... edge of ... brook stood something big and black. It did not

move. The hair of ... frightened teacher rose upon his head with terror. It was too late to turn back. Therefore he asked in ... trembling voice: «Who are you?» He received no answer. Just then ... thing began to move, and stood in ... middle of ... road. Though the night was dark,... teacher could see ... gigantic horseman mounted on ... huge black horse. He became horror -struck. But the horror grew still worse when he saw that ... head which should have been on ... horseman's shoulders, was carried before him. ... teacher kicked his horse and went away, ... figure following. He looked behind him. He saw ... figure raise ... head and hurl it at him. He tried to get out of its way, but it was too late. It struck his head... terrible blow - he fell into the dust, and his horse, ... black horse and... headless rider passed by like ... whirlwind. When a little later ... teacher came to, he found ... hollow pumpkin by his side.

Ex. 13. Revision: *supply the required articles for countable nouns in the following text:*

... story that impressed me concerned ... old Indian who kept ... snake in ... box. It was ... hooded cobra, and ... box had ... thick glass lid. Whenever there were ... new arrivals in ... barracks he always made... same bet with them - to double their money if they could keep ... hand on... glass for fifteen seconds. It seemed ... easy bet; ... glass was too thick to break. But as soon as ... snake struck at ... glass, no one could control ... impulse to snatch ... hand away. In this way, ... old man made ... great deal of money from . . . new arrivals. One day, ... soldier with ... wooden hand asked if he could be allowed to wear ... glove while he laid his hand on ... box. ... old Indian agreed; he was aware that ... glove makes no difference to ... reflex of self -defense. ... soldier laid ... high stake. Everyone in ... barracks gathered round, hoping to see ... old man beaten at last. They were not disappointed; ... soldier kept his gloved hand on ... box while ... cobra struck again and again. ... old man suspected trickery and demanded to see ... hand, but ... crowd of ... British soldiers felt he had been fairly beaten, and forced him to pay up.

Ex. 14. Revision: *supply the required articles for countable nouns in the following text:*

We drank tea, then we all went out for ... walk before it grew dark.... children were gathering ... chestnuts in ... woods, and ... others were playing with ... kites in ... meadow on ... edge of ... wood. Some of ... best chestnuts were on ... highest branches, and they were throwing ... sticks to try to knock them down. Monty saw ... opportunity to display his athleticism; ... lower part of ... trunk was too smooth to climb, but he asked me to bend down so that he could stand on my shoulders. Then he leapt on to ... low branch, and swarmed up to ... top.... boys cheered as he broke off ... branch and threw it down. Then Monty dropped down and slipped into his overcoat, and we walked on. We stopped on ... outskirts of ... wood above ... village, looked at ... view for ... few minutes, and then turned to walk back. At that moment ... boy came running up to us: «Mister, can you help us to get ... kite down? It's stuck in ... tree.» We followed ... boy back into ... wood. When we saw ... tree we felt doubtful; it was ... very tall elm, and there were ... thorn bushes round its base that made it almost unapproachable. ... two more trees grew nearby whose branches touched it, but ... branches looked very thin.... owner of ... kite had already climbed one of ... smaller

trees and was trying to reach ... kite by throwing ... stave cut from ... hedge. It was already dusk, so it was not easy to see how ... kite could be approached. However, Monty saw that he was expected to climb, so he threw off his overcoat and jacket, and climbed. He managed to get ... great deal higher up ... smaller tree than ... kite's owner had climbed, and could touch ... kite with ... stave; but, ... string was tangled in ... branches, and he could not dislodge it. I watched this for ... moment; then, when no one was looking, dropped my own coat and climbed up ... other tree. I soon saw that I could get from here on to ... elm if I was willing to jump across space of about six feet; it was not as dangerous as it looked from below, because ... branch from which I would jump was several feet above ...branch on which I would land. My light weight was in my favor; I got into ... good position, steadied myself and jumped. I managed to scramble on to ... other branch without difficulty. From there on, it was easy. I climbed ... tree, which was as uncomplicated as ... ladder, untangled ... string, and let ... kite float across to Monty who caught it and took it down. Then I went down myself, descending ... lower part of ... trunk as if it had been ... drainpipe; this made my hands dirty, and took ... skin off my ankles, but it was not difficult or dangerous. Nothing was said about it on ... way home. When we got back into ... cottage Monty and I washed our hands at ... sink. By the time I was ready, I knew I had missed ... six o'clock bus home. Monty then said that we could walk down to ... village and have ... drink at ... pub before we caught ... next bus. In ... village, Monty suggested that we should go into ... pub. But I said that I was not yet allowed in ... pubs, being only seventeen. So Monty went inside and brought ... drinks out to us on ... tray. We sat on ... bench, feeling very cold and envying the warmth and light inside. By the time we had finished ... drinks I was warm and happy but we had to run for ... bus.

Ex. 15. *Say in which of the following sentences you are dealing with generic singulars and generic plurals and explain the use of all the articles:*

1. Nature provides **animals** with **weapons** of defense; **the snake, the scorpion, the bee** have their sting. 2. **The French**, he thought, are always finding occasions to block traffic. 3. «Do you know why **Americans** like fried stuff?» John asked. «They've lost their taste. From morning to night they are chewing gum and drinking Coke.» 4. There was nothing of **the artist** in her. 5. **Man's** flight to the moon and his safe return to the earth has now left the realm of science fiction. 6. «**The Italians** are a wonderfully hospitable people,» she said. 7. They wouldn't put out a finger to keep **a hard-working** little man from going down the drain. 8. From the door to the end of the line **the unemployed** began hopefully discussing their families. 9. But the desire for approbation is perhaps the most deeply seated instinct of civilized **man**. 10. **The Tories** were trying hard to attack the mining industry. 11. **The article** is generally placed before **the noun** or its attribute. 12. I'm sure **the Labor** could find a better man for the job. 13. **The ignorant** naturally fear those who are interested in things they don't understand. 14. «The respect for property is ingrained in **the English soul**,» she remarked. 15. At birth **man** is not yet **a man**. To become one he must provide himself with the things that make **man a man**. In other words, with that which distinguishes man from animals. 16. She loved to talk on the quality of television entertainment for the young. 17. It was a drama depicting the life of **the aristocracy**. 18. «A man is fundamentally honest,» he observed. 19. **The police** said that Indians could come

freely to the town and do their shopping. 20. «**Boys** of your age ought to be in bed by eight,» she said. 21. **Chemists** tell you that matter is never completely destroyed. 22. «Do you know why **American women** live longer than **American men**, Jimmy?» «Because they sleep as long as they like in the morning.» «Then my ambition is to live as long as **the American Woman**,» Jimmy said lying back on the bed again. 23. I spoke of the economic position of **woman**.

Ex. 16. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to their generic use:

1. He killed reluctantly those animals he liked. He hated ... mink because it was ... most voracious little predator in ... bush. He liked ... skunk because it was fearless, he liked ... bear, because it was ... great fool, he liked ... raccoon because it was clean, ... beaver because it was clever, but he despised ... fox, because it was cunning, ... wolf because it was ruthless, and ... squirrel because it was... nuisance. 2.... English are ... political nation, and I was often asked to ... houses where politics were ... ruling interest. 3. Princeton University is said to have collected ... data on the relative intelligence of ... men of ... various professions. According to ... mathematicians rate highest, with ... physicists a close second. 4. There is so much of ... schoolgirl still about her. 5. «... Swiss haven't had ... war in a hundred and fifty years and what have they produced?» Jimmy shrugged: «... cuckoo clock.» 6. When they are hurt, ... tough usually suffer more than ... tender. 7. He is ... man who is always ready to work round ... clock. 8. Hopkins was ... rich man as well as ... successful novelist. 9.... man does not live by bread alone. 10. While waiting for ... flight, and without ever leaving ... terminal, ... visitor could shop, take ... bath, have his hair cut and suit pressed. 11. She spent ... great part of her life looking after ... sick. 12. When ... Tories say the class struggle no longer exists, they hope to persuade ... workers not to fight for their just demands. 13.... roses are ... only flowers that everybody is certain to know. 14. «... French are ... easy -going people,» her father used to say. 15. Slowly but surely ... man is conquering Nature. 16. «Only ... two kinds of ... people,» she said, «arrive in ... noiseless cars: ... millionaires and ... police. Since we have no acquaintances among ... former and an ever -widening acquaintance with ... latter, I deducted who had arrived.» 17. In many things it is hard to tell the difference between ... Labor and ... Tories. 18. No man born of ... woman can live in such conditions. 19. In the town there were lots of shops kept by ... Chinese. 20. Of all... classes that stand ... face to ... face with ... bourgeoisie to -day, ... proletariat alone is really ... revolutionary class. 21. «Do you notice the way ... Italians drive?» Maurice asked. «Well,» Jack said, «it's better than the way ... Frenchmen drive.» 22. Beyond ... river, . . . Germans had their lines. 23.... auxiliary verbs have no meaning of their own and are used to build up ... analytical forms of ... verb. 24. After ... strike . . reactionaries began arresting ... Communists. 25. She learned entirely by ... eye.

Ex. 17. Explain the use of articles with nouns used in apposition in the following sentences:

1. The girl he loved was Laura Merton, **the daughter** of a retired colonel who had lost his temper and his digestion in India. 2. It wouldn't be hard to make up a story for **Uncle Philip**. 3. For some days Hotchkin-son, **the solicitor** to whom Eden had

deputed the case, sent me no news. 4. He had been to the tomb of Hafiz **the poet**. 5. **Two men, two passengers**, came along the gangway, and she amused herself by trying to guess whether they were single or married. 6. Charles was dancing with his cousin, **a good-looking, strapping girl**. 7. Even Mr. March, the most realistic man there, could not forgive me. 8. He now arranged with Spender, editor of «The Times Literary Supplement», to write articles on current French literature. 9. They drove up to the terminal, a brightly lighted and air-conditioned building. 10. I was chatting with the man's wife, a lady in purple trousers, when he was called to the telephone. 11. He accepted the post of secretary to a diplomatic mission. 12. In the rear of the car, Margaret Howden, wife of the President of the firm, said to her husband: «You look tired.» 13. He's Doctor Evans, the nephew of your host tonight. 14. The principal of the school decided to send the boy Chalmers back home. 15. That evening I was introduced to Captain Riley.

Ex. 18. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to those used in apposition:

1. Then Rudy saw ... Professor Denton, ... head of ... History and Economics department. 2. The sun was hanging over the hill behind them, ... large red ball which had lost its fierceness. 3.... Philip's wife, ... biggest snob in ... family, invited me to tea. 4. Then we were joined by ... two women, ... acquaintances of Charles and Ann. 5. Across from her sat Delaney, ... producer of the picture. 6. I said: «This is Mary Summers, ... old school friend of mine.» 7. I have got ... job of ... secretary to our new MP. 8.... figure 5 is ... same for ... Russian or ... American while ... word «five» is not. 9.... Admiral Lacey was ... red-faced man. 10. They sat in ... drawing-room round the portable wireless, ... present from Fleur. 11. Then he walked down Broadway, ... main street of ... town. 12. She was ... daughter of ... well-known theatrical manager, . . . willowy, wispy, fair-haired girl with ... colorless eyes. 13. He assumed ... role of... breadwinner for ... family. 14.... General Holt withdrew his plan. 15. They had lunch at Hexley, ... small village on ... coast. 16. He was their favorite nephew, ... son of their dead elder sister. 17. Grant got little information from Andy, ... mail-car driver. 18. He introduced me to ... girl Patricia, and I was glad of an opportunity to look at her face. 19. Peter hit so hard that he broke my arm. I fell to ... ground yelling. Waters, ... gym teacher, carried me off ... field. 20. We spoke to ... Philip's secretary, ... youngish man called Williams.

Ex. 19. Supply the required articles for nouns introduced by 'as' in the following sentences:

1. I then stayed on with the company as ... manager. 2. The education office in the town hall had asked the school to recommend someone as... junior clerk. 3. He was universally known as ... author of the book. 4. Margaret, who had not long graduated at Oxford, was working as ... secretary to a Labor member. 5. His father once occupied this room as ... president of the Town Council. 6. In 1949 I found myself working as ... clerk in the offices of the local electricity board. 7. She had given the watch to Julia as ... birthday present. 8. Ronald had been invited to the party as ... appropriate partner for Ann. 9. Maybe he'll take you as ... assistant. 10. After a time Mr.. Jones engaged the young poet as ... tutor to his three sons. 11. He describes himself as ... independent

radical. 12. He took for granted his position as ... head of the family. 13. His reputation as ... painter is well established now. 14. In 1939 I began to write a story with a senior civil servant as ... main character. 15. At the party, Katherine was acting as ... hostess. 16. I thought I would get a post as ... surgeon on a ship.

Ex. 20. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to those used in some syntactic patterns:

1. My friend Herbert Hoft is ... professor of English literature in one of ... smaller universities of the Middle West. 2. What sort of ... family has he? 3. I don't know any of ... people living in the house next door. 4. «Well, ... boy, you are not going out tonight, are you?» his mother asked. 5. Grant is indifferent to that sort of ... thing. 6. I did not swear as some of ... boys in ... form habitually did. 7. «Yeats is one of ... greatest poets of... age,» I said. 8. We sat ... side by ... side smoking and thinking. 9. It was ... sort of .. occasion when one wants to help but doesn't know how. 10. He didn't want to walk home with any of ... other fellows. 11. Marion, like most of ... girls in ... group, came from ... lower -middle -class family. 12. They cleaned ... house from ... top to ... bottom. 13. What ... long way you have traveled since your first book! 14. What ... kind of ... place are your friends living in? 15. I recognized some of ... facts. 16. He was ... man who wandered mysteriously from ... hotel to ... hotel. 17. What ... odd collection you've got in here! 18. Mrs. Warren bought one of ... elm -shaded villas at ... end of the High Street. 19. She would know ... names of nearly all of ...people who lived there. 20. She kept the bills on the mantle piece, and none of ... shopkeepers was allowed to wait ... hour for his money.

Ex. 21. Revision: supply the required articles for countable nouns in the following sentences:

1. Jarvinen was ... Finn, with ... extraordinary blue eyes. 2. She started ... motor and turned carefully in ... muddy lane. She drove back through ... bridge again clattering of... car over ... loose floorboards reminded her of ... sound she had taken for ... truck passing ... cottage in the night. Of course, it had been ... car going through ... bridge. 3. I felt like ... prince who is schooled from ... age of five to ... idea of becoming ... king. 4. Amy put ... kettle on and got out ... cups and ... saucers, ... spoons, ... sugar bowl. 5. She was married to ... man called Bronson. He was ... planter. He was ... manager of . . : estate up ... river . 6. Outside in ... street, he called for... taxi at ... top of his voice, and set off in chase of it like ... young man. 7. Thames Street was ... broad road on ... edge of ... town half ... mile from ... park. Most of ... houses in it had been built just before... war. 8. You can't treat Charles like ... child. He .is ... grown man. 9 ... pleasantest man in ... office was ... big ex -paratrooper named John Duncan. He was six feet tall, had ... face of ... farmer, and seemed to like everybody and everything. 10. I have married ... Philip's widow. I am ... richest man in ... town today, my friend. 11. All ... big hotels are very much the same. 12. Does it occur to you how boring that sort of ... scene is? 13. He felt ... gentle touch of ... Betty's hand on his shoulder. 14. The plane flew at ... speed of over 1.560 m. p. h. 15. There high society seldom admits ... outsiders into its midst. ... politicians live in their own corruptive circle, ... bourgeoisie, great and small, frequent one another. 16. Her father had started life as ... errand boy, then became .. draper's assistant and was now ... owner of ... prosperous little business. 17. «What ...

beautiful portraits,» she said, «and what ... lucky man you must be!» 18. Opposite ... window stood ... full -length painting of Charles as ... small boy. 19. Several of ... boys at the new school came from ... same part of ... town. 20. Who is ... best man at this sort of ... thing in your office? 21. Trevor was . . . painter. Indeed, ... few people escape that nowadays. But he was also ... artist, and ... artists are rather rare. 22. «What did he do?» «He put ... bomb in ... woman's bicycle basket in ... busy London street and blew ... four people to pieces, including ... woman.» 23. I followed his gaze. ... two men dressed in ... white coveralls were carrying ... large wooden crate up ... path, followed by ... other man carrying ... tool box. «Over here,» my friend called. They put ... crate down in front of him. «Everything ready?» he asked ... man with ... tool box. 24. It's ... kind of ... secret I'm not bad at keeping. 25. Bert Smith was ... art lover, or at least he bought ... pictures.

Ex. 22. Explain the use of articles with uncountable abstract nouns in the following sentences:

1. She had attached herself to youth and hope and seriousness and now they had failed her more than age and despair. 2. Harry rested in the certainty that his duty was to set an example of loving kindness. 3. His face had a calmness that was new to her. 4. There was a look of such deep loneliness on her mother's face that Lucy felt her heart turn over in pity. 5. The ownership of the land was less important to him that the work and sweat he had put into it. 6. However, I don't propose to discuss politics, sociology or metaphysics with you. 7. I was wrapped in the security of childhood. 8. An instinctive kindness made him want to protect Gorin. 9. After dinner, of which he ate little, thinking with dreary satisfaction how grief destroys appetite, he went round to see his confessor. 10. She anticipated the time when they would begin the life which she was sure would give her at last perfect happiness. 11. The rest of the meeting passed without interruption. 12. We were having spring weather when it began to freeze again. 13. Work got done somehow and she never troubled her head as to how. 14. Hospitality was a passion with him. 15. Each moment was sensually enhanced because of the love inside me. 16. He nodded briefly without comment. 17. She said it without malice, there even was genuine sympathy in her voice. 18. He nodded and turned his eyes away with a sense of guilty discomfort. 19. «Yes, the dilemma we're in is of the greatest importance,» said Paine. 20. Anthony read the book with the most passionate attention. 21. He could tell a story with dramatic intensity. 22. I think that we must all have a feeling of profound satisfaction. 23. «Mind you,» said Aunt Milly, «I shouldn't wonder if you're no better at school than the average.» 24. She talked about herself with a frankness that startled me. 25. He spoke with the awkwardness of a man unused to words.

Ex. 23. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to uncountable abstract nouns:

1. He went back home with ... bitterness he had never known before. 2. This thought gave him ... immense satisfaction. 3. She thought that Francis would give her ... happiness Guy couldn't. 4. When I had received the invitation I felt ... certain curiosity. 5. With ... mock gallantry he took her hand and leaned over to kiss it. 6. There was ... quick, startled wonder in her eyes. 7. He was ashamed of ... harshness

that leapt to his tongue. 8. He rose from ... chair and stood by ... window in ... agitated silence. 9. She went back to bed feeling ... curious emptiness. 10. He spoke with ... slow earnestness and his habitually solemn face had ... outraged look. 11. I had ... terrible youth though my father was ... great man. 12. I feel ... real fear as I watch Robert suffering. 13. I felt ... malicious delight at ... absurdity of his position. 14.... music and ... philosophy are like wine they are intended to enhance ... pleasure of being alive. 15. He spoke of it with ... boyish eagerness. 16. His confession forced upon me ... truth that I had never permitted myself to see. 17.... doubt is ... essence of ... excitement. 18. The woman was on her feet with ... swiftness amazing in ... person of her age. 19. He enjoyed ... warmth of her approval. 20. Dave played ... piano with ... peculiar delicacy. 21. At that early hour .. glassy sea of ten had ... immobility which seemed to make all ... earthy sorrows of little consequence. 22. He arranged everything with ... competence. 23. His eyes were so dark that the iris made one color with the pupil and this gave them ... peculiar intensity. 24. As she learned to understand him better she discovered ... rare sensitiveness that lay under his aggressive manner. 25. He observed his guest with ... amused detachment. 26. He sometimes referred to his daughter's marriage with ... gloom. 27. The young man said good -bye with ... jauntiness which deceived no one. 28. A look of ... joy came into his eyes. 29. For ... next two days he was in ... state of... greatest excitement. 30.... kindness was not one of ... things she had normally met with in ... life. 31.... ancient jealousy invaded his heart. 32.... courage and resourcefulness of... women perpetually amazed him. 33.... humor teaches ... tolerance. 34. I have ... greatest admiration for Racine. 35. My first inclination was not to give it ... serious attention.

Ex. 24. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to the nouns 'society' and 'life':

1. I enjoyed listening to her talk of ... Viennese society in ... days of the Hapsburgs. 2. And although ... society of my friends remained relatively the same, ... new influences had entered, ... new winds had sprung up. 3. I had given up taking my wife into ... society. 4. That night Mark talked to us of ... freedom, of how, if we had ... will, we could make ... better society, in which our children would stand ... fair chance. 5. My aunt enjoyed ... society of young ladies and gentlemen. 6. And he introduced me into ... society, different from anything I had ever known. 7. He was overawed when he went into ... society. 8. Holden believed that his people could create ... society in which ... men could live in... peace, and in ... decent comfort. 9.... two houses were only ... few miles apart, but in ... society ... distance was vast. 10. He found ...conventionalities of .. Army life irksome. He began to feel a longing for... more open, less restricted life. 11. If my brother thinks that ... life I am leading now is a razzle he's a lot to learn. 12. After ... brief glimpse of ... working class life, she rushed away to put into print her newly acquired knowledge. 13. The elapsing seconds seemed to draw ... very life out of him. 14. He did not want to send his boy to a school where he would get ... extravagant tastes and acquire ... ideas unfitted to ... station in ... life he would ultimately occupy. 15. Every organization which is concerned to help ... British people to win ... better life was represented there.

Ex. 25. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to the nouns that do not admit of the indefinite article:

1. Everyone hates to have to go out in ... rainy weather. 2. ... work gave him ... increasing pleasure. 3.... weather was so warm that we decided to go swimming 4. He had ... romantic affection for all ... manifestations of ... nature. 5. What ... fine weather we're having today!6.It would be ... fun for George to be ... Governor and for her to be... Governor's wife. 7. At first I found it difficult to understand ... English money. 8. I turned the radio on and listened to ... nine o'clock new^ts.9. In ... warm weather I spent most of the afternoon reading out in ... garden. 10. That morning ... nature was at its loveliest. 11. I did not enjoy my holiday because ... weather was very cold. 12. What's ... news? 13.»Congratulations. That was ... very smart work altogether,» he said.14. Have you heard ... news? 15. We have been having ... frosty weather for ... week. 16. I lent him five pounds last week. Do you think he will pay ... money back? 17.... birds don't like this sort of ... weather. 18. «James is not coming tonight.» «Oh, that is ... bad news.» 19. You ought to stay at home in ... cold weather. 20. I know ... work I've done is ... good work, the best of my life. 21. He began to think of ... fun he had planned for this day. 22. ... weather is changing for the worse. 23. Your friend is... great fun. 24. I'm not the man to give you ... advice. 25. He suddenly became aware that Mike had stopped ... work. 26. Now he remembered that he had given ... permission to remove ... crate. 27. That's ... best news I've heard yet. 28. We hid his watch for ... fun.29.Uncle Nick made me feel that we had ... tremendous work to do.30.Do you like such ... weather? 31.... news from home is bad. 32. I'm going to cut ... grass in ... garden. It's ... hard work, but it has to be done. 33. Oh, this is not ... friendly advice. 34. I was trying not to think about ... work I was set to do. 35. Even if he comes with ... news I'm hoping for, the situation will remain difficult for a couple of days.

Ex. 26. Explain the use of articles with nouns denoting names of materials in the following sentences:

1. «You're drinking nothing.» «You know I never do. Wine is such horrid stuff!» 2. Several other men dropped in, and the air was soon thick with tobacco smoke. 3. Roy was already sliding down the slope toward the water far below. He was churning up the soft snow as he allowed his body to carry itself hurtling down the slope. 4. Oh, I don't like tea, I'll have lemonade instead, 5. «Would you like to have a hot chocolate?» Mrs. Page asked. 6. But look at the dirt on that suit. You must have it cleaned. 7. They've taken to giving you extremely bad teas in the club.8.He was covered in fresh snow, his thin cheeks pink and flushed.9.When the soup was finished Bertha turned round to the fire. 10. She was still warm with the memory of Milly's pancakes which had dripped with butter, and of the coffee which had been served with real cream.

Ex. 27. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to uncountable concrete nouns (names of materials):

1. «I shan't have ... fish,» said Robin. 2. Her room smelled of ... soot and ... face powder. 3.... mud was drying rapidly, but ... car was still stuck. 4. James asked for ... water and drank it thirstily. 5. On the travel he drank . . . tea, but in the cabin it was ... thick coffee with ... sugar and ... tinned milk. 6. They found plenty of ... signs of ...

deer in ... snow. 7.... men moved heavily as though they were walking in ... thick mud. 8. They were buying ... new furniture. 9.... equipment from ... wrecked plane has to be saved. 10. The breeze blew ... candle wax into a runner down one side. 11. She had ... brown shining hair which hung down on either side of her face. 12. Dinner began in ... silence. In ... silence ... soup was finished. It was ... excellent soup, though a little thick. And ... fish was brought. Someone said: «It's the first spring day!» «Spring!» said John, «There isn't ... breath of ... air.» No one replied. ... fish was taken away. Then ... maid brought ... champagne. 13. Your design requires ... very expensive equipment. 14.... boss took up ... pen, picked... fly out of... ink, and shook it on to ... piece of ... blotting paper. 15. Monty and I drank ... beer. 16. «I knit them myself,» I heard ... woman say, «of ... thick grey wool.» 17. She taught ... children to work with ... paper, which could be crumpled up at ... end of ... lesson, with ... plasticine, which could be squeezed back into ... shapeless lumps, with ... bricks and ... stones and ... colored balls which could be jumbled together again. 18.... lead salts are more soluble in ... cold water than hot. 19.... machinery bores me. 20.... bread in his haversack froze greyly; and ... taste of ... frozen bread is horrid. ... little spikes of . . .ice formed in ... cheese tins of ... jam froze and had to be thawed before they could be eaten.

Ex. 28. Revision: supply the required articles for countable and uncountable nouns in the following sentences:

1. It would have been as difficult to think to him being ... master of ... house as it would have been to think of his wife not being . . .mistress of it. 2.... landscape was flat and covered with ... snow frozen hard. 3. He munched ... sandwich with ... neurotic violence. 4. This is ... story and not... piece of... history. 5. But I won't have ... cup of... tea. I'll have ... coffee. 6. He told himself it was ... stupid case of . . .injured pride. 7. Mrs. Peck was ... very young woman who wore ... dirty yellow sweater and ... thick tweed skirt. 8. Only ... champagne was served at ... ball. 9.... huge Saturday night sadness descended upon Laura. 10. He might at least have ... decency not to read ... letter now. 11. Dancing, ... girls banged into each other and stamped on each other's feet. ... girl who was ... gentleman always clutched you so. 12. «It is ... funny thing, but every time I dance with you ... dances seem very short. «They are. My fiancée is ... leader of ... orchestra.» 13. He was ... only living relative I had, and when I was ... kid I'd lived with him. He'd worked as ... fireman on ... railroad. 14. It was ... simple statement of ... fact, but there was ... certain wistfulness behind it. My wife did not hear ... wistfulness. 15. He came in with ... three cups of ... black coffee. 16. Schumann was ... composer he liked best. 17.He had ... series of ... landscapes of Tibet by ... Russian painter Nicho Jas Roerich. 18. She had ... mature distrust of ... trivial. 19. I felt ... elation I used to feel when I heard ... front door open. 20.... things aren't going too smoothly. 21. I noticed ... Baron take ... three lumps of ... sugar, putting two in his cup and wrapping ... third in ... corner of his handkerchief. 22. I know practically nothing about ... criminal law. 23.... floor was carpeted from . . . wall to ... wall. 24. Margaret was standing against ... wall with ... unlighted cigarette between her lips. 25. Everything in ... room was covered in ... drifts of white. It was ... torn paper. 26. Now he seemed to be chatty and talked to ... jury as ... man to ... man. 27. London is full of ... people from all ... parts of the world during the summer. 28. I went to ... great Communist meeting the other day and on ... banner after ... banner I read ... words

Peace, Work and Well-being. 29. I've no doubt it will give ... immense satisfaction.
30. He knows a great deal about ... ancient Greek sculpture.

Ex. 29. Explain the use of articles with nouns denoting parts of the day:

1. It was almost noon. 2. «Lewis! What are you doing at this time of night?» I heard the well-known voice. 3. I sat all night reading. 4. On the evening of departure the whole village turned out to give us the promised farewell dinner. 5. He used to spend the morning lying about the beach. 6. Toward midnight he saw the gleam of many lights. 7. It was high noon when I woke. 8. Twilight was falling when they came back to the great city. 9. At ten o'clock on a hot September evening he strolled idly down the street. 10. And in the afternoon I used to lie alone, and watch the sun get lower and lower. 11. He always slept late on Sunday morning. 12. It was not a warm afternoon. 13. I made my speech yesterday night. 14. The day was hot and muggy.

Ex. 30. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to those indicating parts of the day:

1. It was nearly ... midnight, and Margaret rose to go. 2. It was ... early morning when ... train pulled into ... station. 3. Outside was ... cold, drizzling twilight. 4. It was ... Saturday morning, and ... weekend guests were coming. 5. It was ... grey, cold day. By ... nightfall, it would rain. 6. We got back to ... inn as ... night was falling. 7. I paid my first visit to them on ... clear cold February night. 8. Martha's talent for sleeping was extraordinary. If nobody went in to awaken her in ... morning she would sleep till ... noon, till two o'clock in ... afternoon, even if she had gone to bed early ... evening before. 9. Charles was in a hurry to get back home by ... midnight. 10. Towards ... evening he called at their house, but found no one at home. 11. On ... Sunday morning... weather was showery. 12.... last evening the sirens went again. 13. She hastened out of ... house and to ... barn. ... evening was coming on. 14. All ... night ... snow fell. 15. Each day, coming to ... office, I looked forward to ... evening. 16. It was ... late afternoon and their shadows lay long across... road. 17. It was ... summer afternoon, ... last day of the Bar final examination. 18.... evening flowed on. I sat working in ... late summer twilight. 19. As he drove me home through ... June dusk, James suddenly told me that he had left his wife. 20. He pulled aside each curtain to make sure that ... window behind it was latched for ... night. 21. His secretary said that Kevin was free in ... evening. 22. ... day passed quietly. 23. Robert decided to kill a great many birds with one stone by spending ... night in London. 24.... night was still, and almost tepid. 25. ... couple next door wouldn't leave until... morning. 26. They played tennis and ping-pong in ... day, and in ... evening, in accordance with ... stiff routine of ... place, they sat down to poker. 27. Surely nothing could be going on there so late at ... night. 28. He let me sit up ... night with him and give him ... things to stop ... pain. 29. It was ... night, but ... street was brightly lit.

Ex. 31. Revision: supply the required articles for countable and uncountable nouns and nouns denoting parts of the day:

1. He was ... son of ... distinguished soldier. He was given ... first-class education. 2. My brother takes ... affair with ... utmost seriousness. 3. It was ... blazing hot August morning and I tried to beg myself off. 4. I was surprised at ... readiness with which she

agreed to my suggestion. 5. ... only persons present were Mrs. Perger and ... old friend of ... family, ... Colonel Legrand, ... army doctor who had been... brother officer of ... Robert's father. 6. She looked at me with her keen eyes: «You're not ... sort of ... boy to be satisfied, are you?» 7.... evening was falling, and as I turned back towards ... house its upper windows shone like blazing shields in the last of ... sunlight. 8. His wife, ... pretty little thing, was ... actress for ... moment out of ... job 9. It was ... wet, warm summer day and ... windows of... drawing -room stood open. 10. «I suppose,» he said, «you are ... young man who wants to come here as ... pupil, aren't you?» 11. My father's hours became more irregular; sometimes he stayed in ... house in ... morning and sometimes both he and my mother were out all ... day. 12. As ... students would do, we had . . . interminable conversations about ... art and ... literature. 13. Grant took up . . . receiver with ... eagerness of which he was not conscious. 14. In ... morning, grey and dark, we sat over our breakfast. 15. Robie examined his father with ... dispassionate attention he gave everything.

Ex. 32. Explain the use of articles with nouns denoting seasons:

1. The year wore on and it was summer. 2. The winter was coming on. 3. It was a warm and glowing autumn, and she lay in the mellow sunshine. 4. I think the country in winter would be horrible, don't you? 5. The summer was here with its bright, short nights. 6. People realized that winter must come sooner or later, and were determined to make the most of the sun while it lasted. 7. «It has been a terrible summer,» he said. 8. He cleaned the barn for the winter. 9. Through the autumn, a busy time for me, I was often uneasy. 10. It was late summer. 11. In March came the first break in the winter. 12. We had a short summer this year. 13. To walk in the garden and watch the spring returning was like rediscovering the world. 14. Later when it grew warmer and the sun seemed as hot as in summer, she would go out into the garden. 15. She went to Scotland for the summer.

Ex. 33. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to those denoting seasons:

1. We used ... cottage for ... week -ends in ... summer. 2. It was ... first day of ... summer. 3. Quite early in ... autumn he began visiting us two or three times each week. 4. As ... autumn passed, I saw ... good deal of Charles and Ann together, 5. It was ... remarkably fine autumn. 6. He walked along ... streets smelling ... spring in ... air. 7.... spring had come early that year. 8. I saw him before he went down to ... Mr. Bell's country house for ... summer. 9. It was ... brilliant summer of 1971. 10. During ... winter I had heard a rumor that she was abroad. 11. They must have met in ... summer. 12. He felt more at home in ... winter than in ... summer because in ... winter -there were ... firelights and ... drawn curtains and one's own company. 13.... summer faded gloomily into ... autumn. 14. In ... autumn young Ben was to go away to a prep school and my job would be ended. 15. ... winter passed 16. He went duck -scooting with the locals in ... autumn and trout fishing with Mr. Clark in ... spring. 17. I expect I shall loathe Manchester. However, I shall not be there long. I'm off to school in ... autumn. 18. It was ... summer and ... place broke out in ... red flowers. 19. «Can't you wait until ... winter?» Sam asked. 20. ... winter had now settled into bright cold days and, . . hard cold nights.

Ex. 34. Revision: supply the required articles for countable and uncountable nouns as well as for nouns denoting seasons and parts of the day:

1. They watched him in ... nervous silence. 2.... winter set in early and unexpectedly with ... heavy fall of ... snow. 3. It was ... dark night, with no moon. 4. It gave me ... intense satisfaction that they all enjoyed my article. 5. He went out shooting every morning in ... autumn. 6. In ... morning when he awoke, he found his breath frozen on ... blanket. 7. Because he had succeeded in bearing . . . unbearable he was not. . . man he had been . . . year ago. 8. He soon learned that Grey was . . . head of ... department. 9. Then . . . spring came, late, cold and rainy. 10. I paid my first visit to his house on ... clear February night. 11.... expedition started in ... autumn of 1967. 12. In ... garden there was . . . patch of . . . longish grass, bordered by ... flower -bed, and some raspberry canes; I was specially fond of ... trees - . . . three pear trees by ... side wall and . . . two apple trees in ... middle of ... grass. 13.... letter began so tritely as though . . . surgeon Dr. Larry Skeen were still . . . small boy writing home from . . . vacation camp. 14.... magnificent spring afternoon was already deepening into . . . dusk. 15. In ... winter this region is deep with . . . snow. 16. He was . . . bachelor with . . . small income. 17. Isn't it nice that . . . winter is behind us? 18. It was nearly . . . sundown. 19. They had better finish . . . work before . . . winter. 20. In ... moment he was quiet again and . . . stillness of ... room became oppressive.

Ex. 35. Explain the use of articles with nouns denoting meals:

1. **Lunch** was ready and we went in. 2. I'm sorry I can't offer you dinner. 3. I'll try to give you a decent **lunch**. 4. Mother told me to go out and buy some eggs for **lunch**. 5. After a light lunch everyone relaxed for a time. 6. He ordered a modest **dinner**. 7. On the evening of departure the whole village turned out to give us the promised farewell **dinner**. 8. I arranged to give a lunch for them. 9. I was having **tea** with her. 10. I want you to have a nice **breakfast**. 11. We were talking about it before **dinner**. 12. I was on my way to make final arrangements about a **dinner** I was giving that evening. 13. It did not take one very long to have **dinner** in 1943. There wasn't enough of the **dinner**. 14. Charles and I were alone al **lunch**.

Ex. 36. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to those denoting meals:

1. ... substantial tea was laid on ... table. 2. ... invitations to ... dinner for sixteen people were sent out. 3. He said he would have . . . very good dinner on ... train. 4. Hudson talked more during . . . dinner than was usual with him. 5. So after I had finished . . . supper I came back along . . . passage to ... empty dark front room. 6. «Nevil is coming to ... dinner,» she added. 7. She intended to have . . . glorious supper for my sake. 8. He was afraid he would be late for ... lunch. 9. But now and then Maude prepared . . . dinner for him in ... apartment. 10.... lunch was finished and soon I left. 11. She had been smoking incessantly since they finished . . . supper. 12.... tea came in almost at once. 13. She made . . . long telephone call from . . . lobby and ate . . . quick lunch. 14. If he were kept late at ... official dinner she would work herself into . . . fever of . . . apprehension. 15.... tea tasted of ... straw. 16. He was giving, big lunch on ... following day and at... end of.. week ... grand dinner. 17.... tea was over. 18. I found her in ... kitchen, peeling ... potatoes for ... lunch. 19. But ... hot bath and . . . good dinner fixed

him up. 20. She smelled strongly of ... scent, but not so strongly as to disguise ... fact that she had eaten at... dinner ... dish highly flavored with . . . garlic.

Ex. 37. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to those denoting diseases:

1. My daughter's children went down with ... chicken -pox. 2. She suffered from ... bronchitis. 3. Sheila who had recovered from ... measles was also there. 4. She had been absent less than ... week when .. operation for ... appendicitis was performed on her. 5. «Were you sick?» «I had ... fever.» 6. I am suffering from ... malaria and I am sure you don't know what it feels like when ... fever comes on. 7. . . .boy sat upright against ... two pink pillows; ... mumps had not noticeably increased ... fatness of his face. 8. «You've lost so much weight and your color has changed.» «5 had ... jaundice,» Dan said shortly. 9. Mr. March always expressed ... gloomy concern if any one of his children had ... sore throat. 10. He was laid up with ... 'flu and did not let us know about it. 11. My father had ... asthma and ... climate of London always left him a little forlorn in ... morning. 12. Finally I came down with ... pneumonia. My mother took me home to nurse me. While I was getting over ... pneumonia I decided what I was going to do. 13. «Your hair is short and curly.» «I had ... scarlet fever and it had to be cut.» 14. That day I happened to have ... grippe and didn't know it. 15. In January I had ... diphtheria, with ... complications.

Ex. 38. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to the nouns 'bed', 'table', 'school', 'hospital', 'prison', 'church' and 'town':

I. Then he carefully placed ... money on ... bed. 2. They were discussing it after ... supper, when ... children were in ... bed. 3.... room was in ... darkness. I dimly perceived ... bed in ... corner. 4. ... doctor shrugged his shoulders and sat down beside ... bed. 5. He would pile... journals and ... newspapers, ... books and ... pamphlets on ... bed, ... table and ... spare chairs. 6. When he finished at ... midnight, too exhausted to read any further, he went to ... bed. 7.... bed itself was wide and high. 8. His aunt urged that he should be sent to ... bed on the spot. 9. I turned toward my own room where I ... bed would have been made up for me. 10. He worked hard and often got out of ... bed at ... night to make sure that he had written point down. 11. I swung my feet off... bed. 12. He was playing with ... dog's ears who had established himself by ... bed. 13. In ... few minutes she went to ... bed. 14. I pushed off ... bedclothes and sat on ... side of ... bed.

II. 1. She sat down beside ... table and began clipping ... stalks of... flowers and arranging them in ... vase. 2. He would not argue with... guest at ... table. 3. We sat at kitchen table talking about ...things. 4. Tom, who was reading at ... small table near him, looked up.5.There used to be ... table near the window.

III. Mr. Peck came in. He taught us ... algebra and ... geometry; he was... man about fifty -five who had spent his whole life at... school.2. This talk went on throughout ... drive back to ... school. 3. Paula taught Greek and Latin at ... local school. 4. In fact, though clever, he was idle at... school and far from bookish. 5.... fees at ... secondary

school were ... three guineas ... term. 6. In ... morning I went as usual to ... school. 7. He went to ... school to speak to ... head -master about his son. 8. At... odd moments he glanced back on those wonderful two weeks before ... school began.

IV.1. He's in ... hospital with ... couple of... ribs and ... shoulder cracked. 2. He lives in one wing of... house, and has turned the rest into ... hospital. 3. After ... lunch Dr. Raily went off to ... hospital. 4. She had met his father when he was captured and brought to ...Austrian hospital where she was ... nurse in first World War. 5.He told us that... man had been gored by ... bull and was in ... hospital.6.She told me that for ... while she had worked in hospital. 7.On ... day he was due to attend ... hospital she secretly phoned his doctor. 8. They had... hospital in ... town during ... war. 9....Dan's scratched face became inflamed and poisoned and he went down with ... high fever and was carried off to ... hospital where he lies at present. 10. Doctor Huger is ... best man for you but he's at ... hospital doing ... emergency operation. 11. He is in ... hospital and his conditions reported as being serious. 12. My mother admitted that ... hospital to which Uncle Nick had been taken was ... lunatic asylum. 13. He was in ... hospital for ... few weeks, and came back more moody than ever.

V. 1. St Peter's is ... church often chosen by ... fashionable people for ... funerals and ... weddings. 2. They stood for ... moment, then all together slowly moved towards ... church. 3.«Do you go to ... church?»«Occasionally.» 4. I could see from ... car ... church on ... sharply rising slope. 5. About half past ten ... cracked bell of ... small church began to ring. 6. They rode in ... silence for ... moment, ... church disappearing behind them. 7. «Bertie,» she said to my father, «I shall go to ... church this morning.» 8. She was dressed for ... church.

Ex. 39. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to those used phraseologically:

1. We sent . . . results of ... vote by ... letter. 2. He went to ...rotten log near at ... hand and began to dig under one end of it with his knife. 3. It was . . . holiday, and no games on ... account of ... rain.4. So I thought we would have . . . good dinner and go to ... ballet. 5.His -father had crept several times on ... tiptoe into . . . room to see if he was stirring. 6. And on ... top of all that he had . . . quarrel with his wife. 7. Let's go by ... underground. 8. On ... consideration I am not so sure you're right. 9. He took one of ... books at random.10. He opposed my plan on ... principle. 11. I came across . . . book by. . . chance. 12. I'll make . . . inventory of what we have on ... hand. 13.After she had . . . leisurely dinner downstairs Julia played . . . piano for. . . while. 14. There was nothing to be said in answer to such . . .bitter accusations. 15. His name was mentioned in ... connection with. . . ping -pong championship. 16. He spent part of ... afternoon telling them . . . news he could not tell them by ... telephone. 17.... little car in ... question now stood outside . . . front door. 18. He knew Mario Sharpe by ... sight as he knew everyone in Milford. 19. He asked . . .man what was his idea with . . . regard to ... best means for accomplishing his plan. 20. On ... examination . . . object turned out to be ... page torn from . . . book. 21 transport must come by ... sea to Plymouth. 22. I broke my spectacles by ... accident and then found I didn't really need them. 23. He was so uneasy that his presence was out of ... question. 24. «Are you . . .

bad sailor?» she asked quickly.«About as bad as is possible, in . . . spite of having been at ... sea so much.»25. They are at ... sea now. They write that they are having . . . marvelous time.

Ex. 40. Revision: supply the required articles for common nouns in their various uses in the following sentences:

There was . . . empty bottle by ... side of ... bed, which had contained. . . milk, and in ... piece of ... newspaper . . . few crumbs. 2.He went to ... tiny kitchen, where Jie knew his way around, and put ... kettle of ... water on ... stove. He poured ... milk into ... jug from ... carton in ... refrigerator, then drank some milk himself before putting ... carton back. 3.... school was ... pride of ... town. It was made of ... brick. 4.... driver was ... broad red -faced man who looked like ... captain of ... liner. 5. When he was in ... hospital she could not get . permission to visit him. 6. We had ... thin soup, ... lamb cutlets coated in ... breadcrumbs, and ... French -fried potatoes. 7. It was with ... greatest difficulty that Brian had persuaded him to join ... Fabians. 8.... boy Roger sprawled on ... mat nearest to ... door. 9. He rattled on, telling ... anecdote after ... anecdote. 10. All through ... afternoon he had been torn by ...sorrow his brother did not know. 11. Her face had ... hardness of ... face on ... coin. 12. Don't be ... liar enough to say that you like it. 13. She spoke of... cars with ... lyrical intensity that ... other people gave to ... spring, or ... first snow drop. 14. I understand ... irony in your voice. 15. I have to go up to ... town on Tuesday to see ... man. 16. I did not mean to say it. It came out by ... accident. 17. Then he came to Winton to do ... research for ... year. 18. Outside church we met several neighbors. 19. He found himself ... face to ... face with ... Lieutenant Evans. 20. When ... news came that France had mobilized, and that ... Germans had crossed ... Belgian frontier, George abandoned all ... hope immediately. 21. Fortunately we have ... time to decide since there are ... two months of ... wet winter left us and nobody will bother us until ... spring. 22. It was impossible to say how ... things were going on ... beach. 23. Francis Chadwick was ... tallish good-looking woman, ... natural blonde with ... clothes and ... figure of ... girl who had «modeled» ... clothes. 24. He became ... secretary of... society he founded. 25.... iron is ... bread of ... industry; ... nickel is ... meat. 26. It was ... cheerful place in which to pass ... wet March afternoon. 27. He was in his late seventies, confined to ... wheel -chair, but radiating ... tremendous self -confidence. 28. I was ... qualified radio technician in ... civilian life. 29. They went out and saw that ... dawn was breaking. 30. He took him for ... ride at ... twilight.

Ex. 41. Revision: supply the required articles for common nouns in their various uses in the following texts:

I. Although it was ... early afternoon all ... lights in ... restaurant were on plane from New York had been delayed. ... usual gloom of... airport was intensified by ... weather. In ... corner of... restaurant,... man and ... woman waited, drinking ... coffee, watching ... two small children, ... boy and ... girl who were plastered against ... big window that overlooked ... field.... woman was in her early thirties, with ... pretty figure pleasantly displayed by ... modest grey suit. She had ... short black hair swept back in ... latest fashion, and her large grey eyes were cleverly accented by ... make up.

II. I did not feel too good. I had ... headache and ... sore throat, and I went to ... bed at eight o'clock with some lemon and honey. When I woke up in ... morning I was so full of ... cold that I could hardly breathe. I got up and took my temperature, and upon finding it was ...hundred point four I went straight to ... bed again.... Father wanted to send for ... doctor, and I said I did not want ... doctor. I slept most of ... day. At ... teatime ... Father came up to see me. He was carrying ... huge parcel. He put it down on ... bed. I started to undo ... brown wrappings. It was ... enormous doll. It had ... real hair and several complete changes of ... clothes, with ... hats and ... gloves and ... shoes and ... socks and ... parasol. I was overcome. I stared at ... bright cheeks and ... black curls and ... blue china rolling eyes and ... long lashes. «I think it's lovely,» I said.

III. ... moment I flung open ... door, I smelt ... strong smell of gas. I flew up ... stairs and into ... kitchen.... air was thick with it, and I could tell from ... noise that ... oven was on, unlit. I switched it' off, pulled open ... window and retreated.... whole house stank, sitting -room light was on. So I went in and found David sitting on ... sofa reading ... magazine.

«What do you think you are doing?» I yelled. «... whole place is full of ... gas. Can't you smell it?»

«Gas?» he asked. «Is it really? I thought there was ... funny smell when I came in. And I have got ... headache, come to think of it.»

«You're lucky you're not dead,» I said and went out into .. corridor.

Ex. 42. Revision: supply the required articles for common nouns in their various uses in the following text:

Mr. Sutton was ... engineer who lived in ... next street, and he was probably ... only good mathematician in our district. I was at ... school with his son Gerald, . . . gentle, bespectacled lad who was not particularly brilliant. Like myself, Mr. Sutton was interested in ... theory of... numbers. I had - tea with Gerald one day and talked to his father; I produced my copy of ... Diophantus's arithmetic, and we sat over it for ... rest of ... evening. I began making ... habit of seeing him two or three evenings... week and talking over ... problems that interested me.

Apart from his engineering, Mr. Sutton had been self -taught. He had left ... school at fourteen and studied at ... night -school; consequently he had ... enormous respect for ... education. He had taught himself... German and ... French, and even play ... piano. He was not much liked by my father, who thought he was ... know-all. Mr. Sutton enjoyed standing in... garden on ... starry nights and explaining ... names of all ... constellations to me; if we walked in his garden on ... sunny day, he would break off... talk about ... mathematics to tell me ... botanical names of ... flowers. He spoke ... few words of ... dozen languages, and liked to be considered ... good linguist.

Ex. 43. Revision: supply the required articles for common nouns in their various uses in the following text:

... fire was low, and James asked me if I would mind getting in more coal, since my shoes were thicker than his and therefore more waterproof. ... coal was kept in ... shed at ... bottom of .. back garden, on ... other side of ... lawn. I took ... scuttle and ... shovel, and walked across ... wet lawn; it was ... dusk, and ... rain had stopped. Behind

... coal shed flowed ... stream, and I pushed my way through some stinging nettles to peep down at it. I always loved ... sound of ... running water. It was so pleasant that I stood there for ... few minutes, enjoying ... clean air and ... smell that came from ... orchard on ... other side of ... stream. Then I turned back to ... shed, and began to fill ... scuttle with ... coal. As I did so, I had . . . feeling of someone standing behind me. I cannot explain why I felt sure of this. When I turned round, holding . . . full scuttle, I was aware that someone was looking at me from ... upstairs window of ... cottage, and I thought I could see ... face through ... dusk.

Ex. 44. Revision: *supply the required articles for common nouns in their various uses in the following text:*

... winter set in early and unexpectedly with ... heavy fall of ... snow.... snow came silently through ... night, and Christine and Andrew woke to ... great glittering whiteness. ... herd of... mountain ponies had come through ... gap in ... broken wooden palings at ... side of ... house and were gathered round ... back door. These dark wild little creatures started away at ... approach of ... man. But in ... snowy weather ... hunger drove them down to ... outskirts of ... town. All ... winter Christine fed ... ponies. At first they backed from her, but in ... end they came to eat from her hand. One especially became her friend, ... smallest of them all, ... black tangle-maned creature whom they named Darkie. ... ponies would eat any kind of ... food, ... scraps of ... loaf, ... potato and apple rinds, even ... orange peel. Once, in .. fun, Andrew offered Darkie ... empty matchbox. Darkie munched it down and licked his lips. Though they were so poor, Christine and Andrew knew ... happiness. Christine, for all her look of ... inexperience, had ... attribute of ... Yorkshire woman: she was ... housewife. With ... help of ... young girl named Jenny, ... miner's daughter who came daily, she kept ... house shining. When Andrew came in tired, she would have ... hot meal on ... table which quickly restored him.

Ex. 45. Explain the use of articles with nouns denoting unique objects and notions:

1. He turned away, and lay with wide -open eyes, looking out of the window at the sinking sun. 2. The storm had blown itself out. The last clouds, broken in lurid, ragged-edged fragments, were sailing gently over a soft blue sky. 3. Henry did his best to lend an appearance of secrecy to the proceedings of the commission that were reported daily in the press. 4. «I suppose I oughtn't to tell you, but someone ought to be thinking of the future,» said Aunt Milly. 5. She opened her eyes to their widest when she was told what a brilliant future spread before her. 6. On such an evening every one looks up at the Milky Way. 7. In Milford if you call John Smith on the telephone you expect John Smith to answer in person. 8. Charles broke in: «She wants a good world.» 9. It was the same house all right. We entered the tall gloomy archway as we had so often in the past. 10. The night was very dark, with a cold, damp gusty wind from the west. 11. That is Sirius, a gigantic sun, many millions of miles from us. 12. People all over the world want peace.

Ex. 46. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to those indicating unique objects and notions:

1.... sky was still dark to ... east, but it would soon be ... dawn. 2. In ... past when they

had come to ... country in ... summer he had taken ... rest from ... research. 3. It was ... night still, but ... stars were pale in ... sky, and ... day was at ... hand. 4. It was ... August night of ... extreme beauty, ... moon was just about to rise over ... hills. 5. He explained later that he hadn't rung up again because he had had no more coppers for ... telephone. 6. Kim threw up ... tremendous party. And, of course, ... press was also cordially invited. 7. Through ... gateway . . . thousands of ... miners every day enter ... cages that plunge them more than ... mile into ... earth. 8. Coming down ... street, George had noticed that it was ... clear night with ... full moon and he insisted on going to the Embankment to see ... moonlight on the Thames distinct rumble of future and regret ... world. I want on ... water, but was sky 9.... cloud, hitherto unseen, came upon ... moon. 10. Aunt Bertha liked my company, let me listen to ... radio, and made me ... cakes and ... tarts. 11.... stars were faint and dim and lovely in ... soft misty night sky. 12. «We've got to make arrangements for ... future.» «But have we ... future?» he asked. 13. It was ... perfect night and ... moon was just rising. 14. And curiously enough, at this moment, there came.... thunder out of... cloudless sky. 15. We hope for past. 16. Obviously we take ... different views of ... better world. 17.... moon made ... faint pathway .. house was still lit up by ... setting sun. 18. There .. hamburger stand ... block to ... east. 19.... moon set, and in countless stars shone with their terrifying brilliance. 20....man is ... master of ... whole earth, above and below, from ... Equator to ... Poles.

Ex. 47. Revision: in the following sentences supply the required articles for common nouns and nouns denoting unique objects and notions:

1. They came out of... bar into ... street and they walked against... soft breeze, . . .hand in ... hand air was like ... drift of ... pollen.... three -quarter moon, pale as ... china in ... fading sky, sailed over ... towered offices. 2. He had always been ... generous man. In ... future he would be able to be even more generous. 3. All that day she roamed about ... empty school, unable to settle to anything. She played ... piano in ... music room for ... few minutes, jumped up and went to ... gym where she did ... tentative exercise or two on ... wall -bars: she was getting stiff. She made herself ... sandwich, poured ... drink, then put it back into ... bottle. ... sky grayed over and all ... shine had gone from ... sea. She began to prepare ... supper, something that would keep in ... oven. From ... wood ... maddening bird cried out again and again before ... sleep. She found herself listening for ... sound of ... car. 4. I like ... theatre, but George has always said he's too tired to go out at... night. 5. He was filled with ... vision of ... ideal world in which ... intellectuals showed ... toilers how to eliminate ... toil. 6.... news meant that Alec would soon have ... brilliant future behind him. 7. «We shall have ... rain tomorrow,» said George, instinctively looking at ... cloudy sky, invisible beyond ... glare of... street lamps. 8. Only ... coppery light of ... low autumn moon, sifting through ... tall, distant pines, ruffled ... water that was as black as ... young crow's wing. 9.... past is ... foreign country: they do ... things differently there. 10. My mother left ... table set for ... tea. 11. Chekov was elected ... honorary member of ... Tsarist Academy of Sciences in 1900, but he resigned in ... protest two years later after ... Tsar annulled ... election of Maxim Gorky, ... writer now seen as ... father of... Soviet literature. 12. He switched off... radio and went to... bed. 13. Angela was returning by ... train from ... South of France. It was ... weary journey; ... train was already eight

hours late;... restaurant car had disappeared during ... night. 14. For ... hour she spoke quietly and held ... audience of 2,000 spellbound people with what she had to say. 15. Joe and I took ... lunch together once ... week, every Friday; unless he was out of ... town.

Ex. 48. Revision: supply the required articles for nouns in the following descriptions of weather and nature:

1. But when ... day came ... weather, which had been fine and warm, broke; ... sky was grey and ... drizzling rain was falling. 2. It was ... late afternoon and ... drizzle turned into ... steady rain. It was getting dark, and ... grey sky seemed so close overhead. 3.... days and nights grew colder and colder. At ... noon ... sun was ... cold bloody smear in ... misty sky. 4. Dan and Ann were on skis. Sometimes he led ... way. Neither had to break trail, for ... crusted snow made their passage swift and effortless. Every so often ... mysterious stirring of ... air would send ... powdery snow sifting down from ... lofty trees.... falling snow shone like ... diamonds in ... moonlight. 5. «... sky is cloudy and it looks like ... rain.» «... rain will help ... things grow.» 6. Though ... rain ceased at ... noon... air still felt moist. 7.... birds' songs ceased; ... trees were still, and far over ... mountains there was ... mutter of ... dull, menacing thunder. 8. We went to ... bed early, and in ... night it rained ... little, not ... real rain but ... shower from ... mountains. 9. Jack sat smoking and looking silently out at ... drizzling rain. 10. On the whole we had ... fine weather. 11.... fine weather held and we wandered in ... fields. 12. He was still asleep when ... snow began to fall in ... early morning. It did not wake him. It covered his sleeping bag, and even his face and head, but he slept on until ... grey light of ... day disturbed him. 13. It was bleak and cold when I got there and ... thin rain was falling. 14.... scent of ... lime trees hung over ... suburban street; ... lights were coming on in some of ...houses; ... red brick of ... new church was bright in ... sunset glow. 15. I must have fallen asleep because I woke suddenly with ... start and heard ... crack of ... thunder in ... air. I sat up clock said five. I got up and went to ... window. There was not... breath of... wind.... leaves hung listless on ... tress waiting.... sky was slightly grey.... jagged lightning split ... sky.... other rumble in ... distance. No rain fell. I went out into ... corridor and listened. I could not hear anything. I went to ... head of ... stairs.... hall was dark. I went down and stood on ... terrace. There was ... other burst of ... thunder. One spot of ... rain fell on my hand. It was very dark. I could see ... sea beyond ... valley like ... black lake other spot fell on my hand, and ... other crack of ... thunder came. One of ... maids began shutting ... windows in ... rooms upstairs.

Ex. 49. Revision: supply the required articles for all kinds of common nouns in the following texts:

I. I came home from ... school one afternoon and found my uncle sitting at ... table, sipping from ... pint mug of ... tea, and making ...calculations on ... sheet of ... paper. My mother was sitting opposite, reading ... newspaper. I sat down and ate ... bread and ... jam.

II. I came home from ... school one day with ... slight headache, and took ... two aspirins from ... bottle in ... medicine cupboard. They left... curious after -taste in my mouth, and when my mother came home half... hour later I told her what I had done.

She shrieked and ran to... telephone; I had taken some tablets that ... doctor had prescribed for her stomach cramps, and she had been warned that it was dangerous to exceed ... stated doze -one tablet ... day. She had broken ... bottle that morning, and transferred ... tablets to ... empty aspirin bottle.

III. My Uncle Nick began teaching me ... mathematics and I spent... hour every day with him. I liked ... figures. They amused me. They gave me ... certain sense of... power. I liked to be able to tell. . . people how many gallons of... water were used in our town every day, how many hours everyone sleeps in ... lifetime, how long it would take to cover Mount Everest with .. cigarette stubs thrown away every week in London. Uncle Nick was ... excellent teacher. He took care not to bore me with too many theories; instead, we went through ... books of... puzzles, and invented ... puzzles to try to baffle one another.

Ex. 50. Revision: supply the required articles for all kinds of common nouns in the following text:

... Uncle Nick's effects had to be moved out of his room so that it could be re-let. His landlady was unwilling to store them, so she asked my father to collect them. It was ... big job, for ... Uncle Nick had ... hundreds of ... books. They had to be collected in ... van and were taken down to our basement one day when I was at ... school. I was not told about this; but on returning home from ... school I noticed ... small jade statuette of ... athlete on our living -room shelf; I knew it belonged to ... Uncle Nick, and began looking for ... rest of his things. When I found that ... door to ... coal -cellar had been locked, I guessed they were down there. I showed no curiosity.

... week later I returned from ... school and found ... house empty, my mother being at ... shops. I knew ... other way into ... coal -cellar, through ... grating on ... far side. It was ... tight squeeze, but I managed it cellar was large; ... coal and ... coke were kept on one side, and ... sacks of ... potatoes, ... cooking apples and ... jars of ... preserve on ... other. Most of ... books had been packed into ... enormous old trunk, and ... remainder piled on ... top of it. I switched on ... light and went carefully through ... books.... ones on ... top of ... trunk were ... boring volumes of ... theology. I piled them on ... floor, and looked inside. These were ... ones I wanted to see.

While I was still searching through ... trunk I heard my mother come in, and I had ... momentary panic. Then I thought that if she came down for ... potatoes I could probably hide myself behind ... coal. So I went on searching, until I had selected ... dozen volumes that I wanted to read. Then I carried my books over to ... grating, pushed them outside, then wriggled through. When I got back into ... house I even remembered to wipe ... coal off my face.

Ex. 51. Revision: supply the required articles for all kinds of common nouns in the following text:

Early in ... morning, ... knight started again on his journey, hoping to cover ... long distance, but ... way through ... forest was very difficult so that, when ... evening fell, he found himself only on ... edge of ... Yorkshire forests. By this time ... man and ... horse were very tired. It was necessary to find ... place to spend ... night but looking around ... knight saw only ... deep woods with ... few open glades and paths. ... sun, by

which ... knight directed his course, had now sunk, and he did not know which path to follow. At last he decided to let his horse follow his own instinct and find ... right way. ... tired horse at once seemed to become more lively and took ... path which turned off from ... former course. Soon ... path grew ... little wider and ... sound of ... small bell gave ... knight to understand that he was near ... chapel. At last he reached ... open glade and saw ... small hut. At ... little distance on ... right hand there was ... fountain of ... purest water. Beside ... fountain were ... ruins of... very small chapel green bell hung at... entrance of... chapel. It was ... sound of this bell that ... knight had heard some time before. He sprang from his horse, approached ... hut and knocked at ... door.

Ex. 52. Explain the use of articles with names of persons in the following sentences:

1. On the way home Isabel said: «You must speak to Father tomorrow.» 2. He told an anecdote about Stern. As soon as Dave realized that the reference was to the Stern of the famous Stern-Gerlach experiment, his ears pricked up. 3. At that moment they were interrupted by the gentle Mrs. Shobbe. 4. At a table in a corner the Colonel was introduced to a Mrs. Biist and a Mrs. Peck. 5. In the kitchen a tearful Doris was wilting under the stern reproof of her mother. 6. The children were not allowed by their mothers to play with the Connollys. 7. He was talking pleasantly to the glowering and unresponsive David. 8. To have an early breakfast was unbecoming a Blair. 9. But I'm going to have supper with the Robertses. 10. «Charlie,» the irresponsible Emily broke in, «I tried to reach you this morning.»

Ex. 53. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to names of persons:

1. As we were returning up ... street, ... cat darted out from one of ... houses in front of us.... Montmorency gave ... cry of ... joy and flew after his prey. His victim was ... large black Tom. I never saw ... larger cat, nor'... more disreputable -looking cat. It was ... long, sinewy -looking animal. It had ... calm contented air about it. 2. One day he was taken by ... friend to ... party given by ... certain Mrs. Lambeth, ... rich banker's widow. 3. Being himself ... fine musician, and ... superlative performer on.. .violoncello, my father dreamed of turning me into ... young Mozart, and my training on ... piano began when I was three years old. 4.... Bradley who settled here was what I suppose you might call ... farmer. 5. When ... dear old Mrs. Hay went back to ... town after staying with ... Burnelies she sent ... children ... doll's house. 6. At that time I had ... greatest admiration for ... Impressionists. I longed to possess ... Sisley and ... Degas. 7.... Jason who came back from the Easter holidays with ... black band around his arm was ... very different person from ... Jason of ... term before. 8.... Mr. March had been compelled to speak loudly, even for ... March, to make ... deaf lady understand. 9. «It sounds most tempting,» remarked ... polite Lanny. 10. There was no porter to carry his large valise, but he managed to get into ... carriage just as ... train started. It was ... Pullman, so crowded with ... officers that he hadn't room to sit down. 11. After we lost my brother in ... war and then ... Mother died, he didn't bother about living ... respectable life any longer and just did what he liked. 12. From ... hill Ed tried to wave to ... lonely Nancy who, deserted by her brother, had begun to dig herself ... castle in ... sand. 13. When my uncle tried me with ... few simple problems in ... algebra, he looked pleased and said to my mother: «Your son could be ... other Einstein.» «Who is

... Einstein?» asked my mother. I was glad she had asked. I wanted to know too. 14. «Very well, Papa,» said ... obedient Milly. 15. She climbed ... stairs and walked with ... completely silent Katherine down ... corridor. 16.... poor Tom saw no harm in repeating those absurd stories. 17. «Doctor Baker?» she repeated, «I don't know ... Doctor Baker. There used to be ... house called Rose Cottage near ... church, but ... Mrs. Wilson lived there.» 18.... Major Wilby and ... lovely Mabel departed. 19. She walked to ... part of... room where ... puzzled Henry was standing. 20.... Bert Smith had ... Citroen, and he drove swiftly and well.

Ex. 54. Sappy the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to geographic names:

1. He had ... pronounced views on what ... United States was doing for ... world. 2.... weather over ... Baltic was said to be worsening every hour. 3. This captain, he said, had made marine history by passing through ... Bosphorus and ... Dardanelles without ... aid of... pilot. 4. Mr. Roberts sipped ... cup of ... coffee and looked out over ... Lake of Geneva. 5. His ship nearly sank in ... Pacific. 6. He told me how he had discovered ... statue, five hundred feet tall, buried in ... sand of ... Sahara. 7.... book was about ... author's wanderings in ... interior of ... Ceylon. 8.... man from ... Sudan carried his bags to ... car. 9. She showed me ... pictures taken in ... Swiss Alps. 10. «I know there are ... British bases in ... Cyprus,» he said. 11. He said it is ... story of... writer who goes on ... voyage to ... South Seas. 12. You oughtn't to spend ... winter in ... London with that cough and your chest. I'll give up my work if you'll come for... month with me to some small place on ... Riviera. 13. His fortieth birthday was at... hand, and he had never been farther ... west than Chicago. 14. The article says that ... events in ... Asia and now in ... Africa are not without their repercussion in ... Latin America. 15. They stood for some time, talking in quiet tones, comparing ... Thames with ... Seine. 16. This was not ... Paris that he had accepted thirty years ago as his spiritual home. 17.... rains were moving ... north from ... Rhodesia. 18. So George, after forming ... various vague plans for ... winter in ... Sicily or ... Island of Majorca had to admit that he had not ... money for it. 19. He was... well-known mountaineer scaling ... Andes. 20. He went down ... road to ... library and came home with ... new book about ... headwaters of ... Amazon. 21. «Where is he?» asked Ann. «He's in ... Buenos Aires.» 22. There aren't many sharks in ... Mediterranean. It is down ... Red Sea that you get them in numbers. 23. He retired to his hotel and sat in his shirt sleeves looking at ... Grand Canal. 24. ... Asia Minor is ... part of ... Asia between ... Black Sea and ... Mediterranean Sea. 25. They stayed in ... Venice for ... fortnight.

Ex. 55. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to miscellaneous proper names:

1. «Do you know where he's staying?» «At ... Bristol.» 2. Mr. Robinson arrived at ... London airport from ... New York yesterday on his way to ... Soviet Union. 3. Usually he used to read ..., few articles out of ... «Time» or ... «Newsweek». 4. When last heard from he was at ... University of Berlin. 5. «What's ... French for 'factory'?» «Usine.» 6. They drove up to ... main terminal -... brightly lighted, air -conditioned Taj-Mahal. 7. He had applied for this assistantship in ... answer to ... advertisement in ... «Lancet». 8. Soon after that he was expelled from ... Harward University. 9.... «Friedrich Weber»

was ... freighter sailing from ... Hamburg to ... Colombo. 10. On their way to ... Savoy Hotel he refused to tell Tom what would happen there. 11. Schiller, ... most popular dramatist in ... Germany, was forced to make... translations from ... French in order to earn ... money enough to live on. 12. David said in ... gruff voice that he never read ... «News of the World». 13. Gracie was ... student at ... London University. 14.... liner «Queen Elisabeth» sails at 8 a. m. this morning, on ... schedule. 15.... lady talked ... bad French at ... top of her voice.

Ex. 56. Revision: *supply the required articles for all kinds of nouns in the following sentences:*

1. When he arrived in ... Soviet Union he was virtually blind, and it was only thanks to ... skill of... late Professor Filatov, ... great Soviet eye specialist that he became able to see again. 2. I felt sure that... Colonel Mac Andrew would not remember me. 3. They boasted that they had been flown over ... late battle -field at ... height of 3,000 feet. 4.... French didn't allow ... publication of ... book in ... French. 5. It was ... quarter to three when ... telephone rang. Mr. Morley was sitting in ... easy -chair, happily digesting ... excellent lunch. He did not move when ... bell rang but waited for ... faithful George to come and take ... call. 6. Mr. Pyne amused himself that evening by going to ... cinema. 7. In ... dining -room ... child Terry was howling at... top of his voice. 8... boy Roger had arrived home with ... measles; his mother blessed ... measles that brought him home. 9.... Adamses were ... pleasant people with ... large family. 10. «Is your father ... businessman?» «Not really. He is ... professor.» «... teacher?» she asked with ... note of ... disappointment. «Well, he is ... kind of ... authority, you know... people consult him.» «About ... health? Is he ... doctor?» «Not that sort of ... doctor. He is ... doctor of ... engineering, though.» 11. She said she was going to ... pictures and invited me to go with her. 12.... three sat talking over ... plans for ... future. 13. He spoke with ... indifference, like ... man weary of ... whole subject. 14. It is necessary indeed to go back to ... middle of ... nineteenth century, when ... industrious and intelligent man called Sibert Mason, who had been ... head gardener at... grand place in ... Sussex and had married ... cook, bought with his savings and hers ... few acres ... north of London and set up as ... market gardener. 15. I was sitting up in ... bed, sipping ... hot coffee, when ... nurse came into ... room. 16. Together they walked through ... mud and ... slush. 17. «All ... men are ... sinners,» my aunt used to say. 18. I spent half my time teaching ... law and ... other half in London as ... consultant to ... big firm. 19. In ... afternoon ... three friends almost quarreled. 20. Andy grinned from ... ear to ... ear. 21. I had read ... poetry at ... school, but as ... task. 22. Aunt Milly was ... enthusiastic liberal; my mother was ... patriotic, true -blue conservative. 23.... box was wrapped in ... tissue paper. 24. His father was ... civil servant, who was ... secretary of ... Post Office in ... Ireland when, in 1916, ... headquarters in ... Dublin was seized by ... Republicans. 25. Let's not bother about ... present troubles and look forward to ... future. 26. «You sit down,» he said, «I'll cook you ... big breakfast.» 27. We were up before ... dawn and didn't stop ... work till ... nightfall. 28. He hadn't said ... word since ... dinner began. 29. They say he has ... great future in his firm. 30. He stayed in ... bed till ... midday.

Ex. 57. Supply the required articles and find the proper place for them with the nouns in bold type:

1. It so happened that the night before I had been at rather cheery little supper. 2. «Great many mistakes have been made in your life,» he added with a smile. 3. I walked half mile with him. 4. The sky was cloudless, there were all signs of a lovely day. 5. She had been so attractive person that it had been hard to judge her. 6. All trunks are packed and ready to go. 7. The doctor said that I didn't seem in too good condition. 8. «Half University signed the protest,» said Professor Lonsdale. 9. I had not suspected that she was so neurotic woman. 10. Her mother was lonely old woman, living in one room with very little to occupy her. 11. He was staying in Piza. What pretty old town is it! 12. My new suit is nearly twice cost of my last one. 13. Would you please send me half ton of coal? 14. I had quite tiring day. 15. When driving in London itself she had as intimate knowledge of its streets - as any taxi -driver. 16. He is such bore that I can't be polite to him. 17. Iri June we had an outbreak of measles and soon half school was down with it. 18. Then sudden desperate weariness overcame him. 19. I've got rather bad cold. 20. This is quite interesting book. 21. Many man has come to the same conclusion. 22. The doctor was authoritative -looking old man with white hair and distinguished manner. 23. He was such pleasant fellow. 24. He was rather successful lawyer. 25. The sun had got more powerful by the time we had finished breakfast, and the wind had dropped and it was as lovely morning as one could desire.

Ex. 58. Revision: supply the required articles for all kinds of nouns in the following text:

When I was nine or ten I borrowed ... book from ... library called. «Men of Mathematics», ... life stories of ... various mathematicians. I read it from ... cover to ... cover in one week -end, spending all ..., time in my bedroom. I can still remember that week -end clearly. It was ... midsummer; ... lilac tree in our garden was in ... bloom, and our neighbor mowed his lawn so that ... cut -grass smell came into ... bedroom. My father told me I should be in ... garden because it was... shame to waste such ... weather, but I ignored him, and went on reading. I had always loved ... mathematics, but this book somehow altered my whole approach to it. It produced on me ... kind of ... effect that... poetry of Keats and Shelly produces on some teenagers. It seemed to me that ... mathematicians were ... elite of ... world.... kings and ... emperors treated them with ... respect. Most of them seemed to live to ... great age. In ... world of ... men who squabbled and intrigued, they stood apart... article about Pascal infuriated me; I shared ... author's contempt for ... Pascal's retreat into ... religion, and it came to me for ... first time that all ... religion is ... pernicious fake. I chortled aloud as I read ... article about Gauss, particularly ... parts about Napoleon -how Gauss had refused to beg ... Emperor to remit ... 2,000 franc fine and had accurately prophesied ... downfall of his enemy. But ... articles on Abel and Galois gave me ... sense of ... luxurious melancholy. Both had died young, Abel of... tuberculosis, Galois in ... duel at twenty -one. I finished reading about Galois in ... dusk, preferring not to switch on ... light, then stared out of ... window for ... long time. ... world outside no longer seemed real. I convinced myself that Galois, if he had lived, would have been ... greater mathematician than Newton or Gauss; this intensified ... tragedy. From that time

onward, I had ... book out of ... library almost permanently -until, some time later, I was able to buy ... second -hand copy. Later still, I bought ... paper -covered edition in ... two volumes and carried it around with me; probably I should have bought ... dozen copies if I had found them; it seemed to me one of ... greatest books ever written.

Ex. 59. Revision: *supply the required articles for all kinds of nouns in the following text:*

I had ... day-dream that stayed with me throughout my childhood and teens, and that still comes back to me. I imagined that ... world had been invaded by ... race of ... wise beings from ... other planet - ... beings whose civilization is far older than ours. They would land by ... space -ship one day, and interrupt ... broadcasts of ... world to explain that they had come to take over... leadership of... human race. They would not be visible; they would not interfere in ... most human affairs.... life would continue as before - but now controlled by... benevolent dictators from ... outer space.... crime would vanish; ... war would come to ... end. ... aliens would enter ... city like Chicago, their intelligence system would locate every dangerous criminal, and all would be arrested and executed without ... trial.... crime would cease to be worth while, because ... aliens would know about it as soon as it was committed.

And finally, every man, woman, and child would be taught... mathematics for several hours ... day. There would be ... non -stop mathematical education, ... films about ... mathematics, ... articles in every newspaper every day, ... radio programs about it; ... station bookstalls would sell ... books of ... mathematical puzzles instead of ... detective stories. All... social distinctions would be abolished.... president or king of ... country would automatically be its greatest mathematician. No man would be ... knight or ... peer unless he was ... superlative mathematician. No rich man would be allowed to keep his wealth unless he could prove that he was ... better mathematician than every one of his employees. In this way after ... few generations, ... children would be born ... great mathematicians. And after ... hundred years of this, ... aliens would be able to leave our planet to take care of itself, in ... hands of ... race of ... men -gods, ... complete masters of their emotions, incapable of ... cruelty and ... self -delusion.

Ex. 60. Revision: *supply the required articles for all kinds of nouns in the following texts:*

I. All ... things need to be examined from ... standpoint of... history. When ... capitalist society fought ... feudal system it put forward ... progressive ideas and sought ... emancipation of ... individual from ... fetters of ... feudal ideology and morals. Not only did ... capitalism bring with it ... tremendous growth of ... productive forces and ... rapid technological advance - ... transition from ... feudalism to ... capitalism opened up ... new field of ... freer development for ... individual, and ... Marxism has always recognized ... progressive significance of this transition. While they have never idealized ... bourgeois democracy, ... Marxists realize that this democracy enabled ... working class to unite, organize and become aware of its role. But with ... march of... history,... capitalism has become... most reactionary impediment to ... human progress.... imperialist bourgeoisie openly tramples underfoot all ... progressive aspirations in ... attempt to save ... system - inimical to ... majority of ... mankind -from ... advance of... progressive forces working for ... peace and ... socialism.

II. One People, United

«We are united in ... freedom and ... independence.» ... solemn words rang out not only in ... chamber of ... National Assembly of ... united Vietnam, where ... 492 representatives of... people were meeting, but throughout ... country.

To achieve this freedom and independence, ... Vietnamese people had to defeat «... biggest post -World War II counter-offensive of ... imperialism against ... revolutionary movement,» Le Duan, ... first secretary of ... Vietnam Working People's Party, declared.

It had to overcome ... dictatorship of ... Vietnamese traitors who collaborated with ... French and later US imperialism. The odds seemed insuperable, but ... heroism of ... Vietnamese people and ... «enormous and valuable» aid, in ... Le Duan's words, they received from ... USSR, other socialist countries and... progressive humanity, won ... war US imperialism was sure it could not lose. Now, ... united Vietnam is ... Vietnamese Socialist Republic... new nation is ready to live in ... peace with all ... countries, regardless of their social system.

Adjectives

Ex. 1. Use the required form of the adjective in the following sentences:

1. He was the (amusing) lad you ever met. 2. He's a far (intelligent) person than my brother. 3. She was the (practical) of the family. 4. When they told me I was cured and could go, I can tell you I was (afraid) than glad. 5. I wanted to ask you both what you thought of my (late) films if you saw them. 6. He is (talkative) than his sister. He won't tire you so much. 7. He turned out to be (angry) than I had expected. 8. Today I'm no (wise) than yesterday. 9. This wine is the (good) I ever tasted. 10. Jack is the (clever) of the three brothers. 11. I don't think it matters in the (little) which seat I choose. 12. He felt (bad) yesterday than the day before. 13. The (near) house is three miles away. 14. Of the two evils let us choose the (little). 15. He was the (late) man to come. 16. She waited until her silence became the (noticeable) thing in the room. 17. The (near) item on the program is a piano sonata. 18. He is the (tall) of the two. 19. She is (amusing) in a small company. 20. Uncle Nick was the (old) son of the family.

Ex. 2. Translate the following into English using various sentence patterns to express comparison:

1. Чем меньше ты будешь говорить, тем лучше. 2. К сожалению, я не смог прийти так рано, как обещал. 3. Кошка упала с крыши, но чувствует себя нисколько не хуже от этого. 4. Комната хорошая, но все же не такая хорошая, как бы мне хотелось. 5. Чем больше человек имеет, тем больше ему хочется. 6. Я не так молод, как вы. 7. Погода меняется к лучшему. 8. Окно узкое, как дверь. 9. Суп хорошо пахнет, а на вкус он еще лучше. 10. Как пройти к ближайшей почте? 11. Если он поможет нам, тем лучше. 12. Если он не делает уроков, тем хуже для него. 13. Чем скорее ты сделаешь это, тем лучше. 14. Он становился все слабее и слабее. 15. На этот раз у вас меньше ошибок.

Ex 3. Translate the following into English using substantivised adjectives where possible:

1. Слепых учат ремеслам, чтобы подготовить их для работы. 2. Требуются няни для ухода за ранеными. 3. У входа в церковь стоял слепой. 4. Доктор хочет осмотреть раненого. 5. После отъезда сына они перестали приглашать молодежь. 6. Молодежи нравится все делать по -своему. 7. Англичане любят чай. 8. В гостинице было много англичан. 9. Больной попросил воды. 10. Он считал, что его долгом было помочь бедняку. 11. Работа по спасению пострадавших продолжалась до глубокой ночи. 12. Ты говоришь как неграмотный человек. 13. Он всегда навещал больных два раза в день. 14. Он надеялся застать юношу еще дома. 15. Для безграмотных были организованы вечерние занятия. 16. Шестерых из пострадавших было разрешено взять домой.

Pronouns

Ex. 1. Use the appropriate personal pronouns in the following sentences:

1.... say there's been a great earthquake in the Pacific. 2. If ... see a giraffe once a year ... remains a spectacle; if ... see ... daily ... becomes part of the scenery. 3. «Mary's married now,» said Mrs. Scott. «... was in the 'Times'.»4. The «Friedrich Weber» was a freighter sailing from Hamburg to Colombo.... also carried passengers. 5. There was a lot of noise all around now, and amongst ... could hear a plane flying unusually low. 6. Pat soon made ... clear that ... did not want to stay there long. 7. I got my hat and beat ... 8. He is dreadfully ugly.... must not start when ... see ..., or ... will put ... off.... doesn't like ... to feel sorry for ... 9. We were climbing a steep hill and the car throbbed as if ... were going to expire. 10.... was cold to sit on the terrace, pretending that ... was really a summer evening.

Ex. 2. Choose between a possessive pronoun and the definite article to use it in the following sentences:

1. She got to ... feet and began to brush off ... dress. 2. Mr. Black gave ... wife a leather bag for ... birthday. 3. Don't show this letter to ... brother. 4. There was a cold wind blowing, so I put on ... heavy coat. 5. He took me by ... hand and led out of the room. 6. His father touched him on ... arm. 7. He took the child into ... arms. 8. What have you done to ... face? 9. He patted Jack heartily on ... shoulder. 10. He bent ... head low. 11. She slapped him on ... cheek. 12. It's going to rain. I'd better take ... raincoat. 13. She put ... glass back on the table. 14. He crossed ... legs. 15. He was wounded in ... leg. 16. He buttoned up ... coat. 17. He caught me by ... sleeve.

Ex. 3. Use the appropriate form of possessive pronouns in the following sentences:

1. The man next door has been busy cutting the grass in (he) garden, 2. He put (he) hand in (she). 3. «This foolish wife of (I) thinks I'm a great artist,» said he. 4. Very well, Mother, I'll have (I) hair cut this afternoon. 5. Then he stopped and pointed and said: «Those are peas.» I said, «We've got some peas, too.» «I expect (you) are bigger than (our),» he said politely. 6. Edwin said, «Dear Mary, we all felt with you. (you)

distress was (we).» 7. We can do (we) shopping before lunch. 8. There's a ghastly article of (he) about it in this evening's paper. 9. She folded the letter and replaced it in (it) envelope. 10. The children had had (they) tea. Kate was late for (she) as usual, Mary and Paul were having (they). 11. This demand of (they) is quite ridiculous. 12. She makes all (she) clothes herself. 13. This book is (I). There Js (I) name on it.

Ex. 4. Supply reflexive pronouns for the following sentences where possible:

1. We enjoyed ... at the dance. 2. She had made ... very unpopular. -3. Why is she sitting all by ... in the dark? 4. Jessica looked at ... in the long mirror. 5. I liked having lodgings of my own, where I could be by 6. I closed the door behind 7. Every man is important to ... at one time or another. 8. All day the children were beside ... from excitement. 9. The young leaves unfolded to their utmost and the fields generously spread... on either hand. 10. He was amiability 11. I found ... doing nearly all the talking.

Ex. 5. Use one of the demonstrative pronouns in the following sentences:

1.... is a cooking apple, ... an eating one. 2. She gave the ... answer as before. 3. «I'm going alone and ...'s ...,» I said. 4. What do you want me to do with...? 5. His mental level at the time of his death was ... of a four -year -old child. 6. He dined there only on Sundays, and not every Sunday at 7. Do you see ... bushes on the other side of the river? 8. Well, ...'s exactly what I did. 9. Don't be in ... a hurry. 10. He continued to frequent the ... cafe as when he had stayed at the hotel. 11. I believe you but there are ... who wouldn't. 12. ... is what I thought last year. 13.... is life. 14. I can't find all the books you asked me for. I put ... I found on your desk. 15.... is what I want you to do. 16. I have divided the books into two piles ... are to be kept.... are to be sold. 17. I have had ... a busy morning. 18. My seat was next to ... of John's mother. 19. He can't be more than three or four years older than you, if20. «One can't compare Chopin's waltzes with ... of today,» said she.

Ex. 6. Supply 'some', 'any' or 'no' for the following sentences:

1. If you have ... news, call me back. 2. She helped borrow ... more money. 3. There is hardly ... place in this house where we can talk alone. 4.... boy at the school had ever taken a scholarship to the university. 5. It meant real hardship to my mother unless I earned ... money at once. 6. My mother hoped that perhaps the school had ... funds to give me a grant. 7. It was unlikely that ... of the guests would take particular notice of it. 8. They understood each other without ... words. 9. «Let's go back home. It's already late.» «I'd rather stay out a little longer.» «I suppose we've got to go home ... time.» 10. There isn't ... boot -polish in this tin. 11. You have ... fine flowers in your garden. 12. Go and ask him for ... more paper, i haven't... in my desk. 13. Later we had ... tea. 14. He wants ... more pudding. You can take it away. 15. There are... matches left. We must buy

Ex. 7. Supply one of the compounds in 'some', 'any -' or 'no -' for the following sentences:

1. At the party you'll see... you haven't met yet. 2. Will there be ... at the club so early? 3. I'm not going to see him because I have ... important to report. 4. I was late. I

found ... in the house. 5. I am expecting ... at twelve o'clock. 6. I think there's ... wrong with my watch. 7. Is there ... at home? 8. The door-bell rang but there was ... there. 9. I know ... at all. 10. Otherwise there was hardly ... to occupy him. 11. «Why don't they do ... about me?» Mr. Scot cried out hearing that his friend had got promoted. 12.... can become a member of the club by paying a subscription. 13. When we get there it may be too late to do 14.... has been here before us. 15. «Why don't you say ...?» he demanded. 16. In the winter he lived without doing 17. He wondered if he would ever again share . . .'s emotion. 18. This is my affair and... else's. 19. Sometimes he would sit silent and abstracted, taking no notice of 20.... is better than ... in a situation like this.

Ex. 8. In the following sentences use the pronoun 'one' in the proper form and, if necessary, with the required article:

1.... man's meat is another man's poison. 2. His parents never appeared in the parish church except on special occasions. Mr. Evans' funeral was such 3. They are six in the family. ... you saw are David and Tommy. 4. Brown's old car is much better than our new 5. There are woolen gloves and leather ... in the crate. 6. It is the most natural thing to start talking to someone who knows nothing whatever about ... and who is never likely to cross ... way again. 7. He was rather pale, and the expression on his face was ... I had never seen before. 8. «Which girl is Jean?» «... in the green dress.» 9. «What has happened to all the brushes?» «I saw ... on the table in the hall.» 10. Such ... as you want is very rarely seen.

Ex. 9. Choose between 'no one' and 'none' to use it in the following sentences:

1.... tried to teach her anything. 2.... of us is perfect; we all make mistakes. 3.... of us knew how ill she was. 4. I'm sure you heard it from Mary, ... else could tell you that. 5.... had anything to gain by his death. 6. I wanted some mere coffee but there was ... left. 7.... of them knows his duty yet. 8. We had ... to give us accurate information, let alone advice. 9. Philip slowly mounted the stairs.... of his family was yet up. 10. I looked around the room, expecting to see piles of books; ... were visible. 11. ... of us knows how much he has suffered. 12. Since ... had an answer to his question, silence fell in the room. 13. He asked for food but his mother said there was 14. ... of the new men have been able to pass the test. 15. Of all the girls he phoned ... were at home.

Ex. 10. Choose between 'all' and a compound in 'every -' to use it in the following sentences:

1. I shall want to hear ... they say. 2. She took the initiative and herself spoke to ... she knew. 3. He couldn't help noticing how well dressed ... was. 4. I want ... to be happy. 5. Then, to .. .'s surprise, she married someone quite undistinguished. 6. ... who have studied this issue have come to the same conclusion. 7. She believed that ... was watching her. 8. ... of his friends had offered him his help. 9. Soon ... were asleep. 10. The lady laughed immoderately at... that was said to her. 11. ... has been taken away that could be removed. 12. ... felt indignant when he began hitting the boy with his stick.

Ex. 11. Choose between 'all', 'every' and 'each' to use it in the following sentences:

1. I have ... book he has ever written. 2. He shouted her name twice, ... time banging his fist on the table. 3. He had been brought up by a mother who had taught him that ... pleasure must be paid for. 4. They did not 'talk much about what... feared most. 5.... trunks must be labeled before being deposited in the left -luggage office. 6. He has ... right to know who you are going to marry. 7. That's the sort of job ... boys like doing. 8. They broke into little groups;... had his own wonderful story to tell. 9. In his absences her ... action seemed automatically governed by what he would like. 10.... the people were cheering loudly. 11. Before he left the classroom he gave... boy a task. 12. She had something to say on ... subject. 13.... the money was spent. 14.... the family were present. 15. And I had to sit out there with ... eye on me.

Ex. 12. Use the pronoun 'other' in the proper form and with the required article in the following sentences:

1. I think the first thing to do is to have ... talk with your sister. 2. It was not a large garden, but it was long and narrow. John and I walked right to ... end of it in silence. 3. I talked to a lot of people. Some said that in the same circumstances they would do as they had done before.... told me that if they had known what it would come to they wouldn't have ever done it. 4. Then I read the novels of George Meredith one after5.... day I made an epigram. I hope you'll like it. 6. They were going to get punished, one way or7. The bar was kept by two very nice girls, one was American and ... English. 8.... people have told me the same thing. 9. That night Kate was gay and could make ... laugh. 10. He was always somewhat indifferent to the feelings of 11. Well, I met him in the club ... night. 12. I made few friends in those days, for I was occupied with ... things. 13. Without ... word he started up the car. 14. He sat in ... arm -chair at the opposite side of the fire -place. 15. The servant opened the door and ushered in ... visitor. 16. Young men and young women would greet me on their way to or from the tennis court. Some found more to say to me than 17. The houses on ... side of the rivers were built out of gray stone. 18. Some people refused to take the advertisements and walked away and ... dropped them on the grass. 19. Why are you alone? Where are ...? 20. Would you like ... cup of tea?

Ex. 13. Use 'both', 'either' or 'neither' in the following sentences:

1. We drove along a wide road with ditches and trees on ... side. 2. Ed and I were... very big men. 3. He invited us ..., but I knew he felt it irregular; he did not want ... of us at a family party. 4. The verandah stretched on ... side of me. 5. The first apple pie of the season was on the table and a large dish of purple grapes. Muriel was too angry to touch 6. I could hear them ... , but saw 7. Cords were drawn on ... side of the picture gallery on days when the public were admitted. 8. These are ... very gloomy rooms. I'm afraid ... will suit me. 9.... his legs were broken in the accident. 10. «Which of the two newspapers would you like?» «Oh, ... will do.» 11. She had brown shining hair which hung down on ... side of her face. 12. «What are you going to have, orange juice or Coke?» «... . I'm not thirsty.» 13. «Tell ... your mother and father that I'm expecting them tonight.» «I'm afraid I won't see ... of them today.» 14. «Which job are you going to take?» «I'm afraid» 15. She can play with the tennis racket in ... hand. 16. By that time ... his sisters had got married. 17. There were trees on ... bank. 18.

You can borrow ... of my two cameras. 19. Nick and Tom are ... my friends. But ... is in the town now. They are ... in the Navy. 20. «What have you written, a short story or an essay?» «I'm afraid it doesn't come within ... description.»

Ex. 14. Choose between 'much' and 'many', '(a) little' and '(a) few' to use it in the following sentences:

1. Nowadays he was very busy and he saw ... of his old friends. 2. I suggested that he should get ... grapes and some bread. 3. Aunt Florne had ... money while none of the other family had inherited as ... as a pound. 4. He was so happily absorbed in the building of his house that events outside it affected him 5. My sister spends so ... money on her clothes that she has none left for holidays. 6. My dear, I'm afraid I have not ... news to convey but still there are ... things I should like to add. 7. I began to miss London: it was not so ... that I had ... close friends there, for I have ... friends, but I missed variety. 8. Tom has eaten so ... that he can't move. 9. Adeline had slept ... last night and she had a headache. 10. She was glad to see me because I was English and she knew ... English people. 11. My engagements were ... and I was glad to accept the invitation. 12. He knew he was not a good teacher, and he intended to do ... of that. 13. At the bar ... men were discussing the coming elections in loud barking tones. 14. Virginia returned to England at the moment when ... were leaving it. 15. I have so ... things to do that I don't know which to do first.

Ex. 15. Make the following sentences affirmative and replace 'many' and 'much' by suitable expressions:

1. Ann had not had many visitors lately. 2. He didn't earn much money and lived in the country. 3. I drove along the edge of the sea. There were not many people about. 4. Were there many things that your mother minded your doing? 5. He hasn't much work to do this afternoon. 6. Dick doesn't smoke much. 7. There isn't much time to catch the train. 8. I didn't get much to eat when I had dinner with the Greens. 9. I haven't much time for watching TV. 10. My father didn't read many books on economics.

Ex. 16. Use interrogative or conjunctive pronouns in the following sentences:

1. They had brought few books with them ... she hadn't read. 2. You're one of the few people ... I'd like to know better. 3. «... of the two of them is right?» he asked me. 4. I don't honestly see ... I can do about it. 5. That is the worst news ... we've ever had from you. 6. He was compared with everyone ... had ever written a successful travel book and the accents of ... were certainly to be caught in his own works. 7.... do we call the sea between England and France? 8. I told him everything ... was relevant. 9.... I saw was a solid-looking brick house. 10.... pronoun is always written with a capital letter? 11. In this room there was a small grate, on the mantelshelf of ... she had arranged two vases of flowers. 12. Looking at him she wondered ... sort of small boy he had been. 13. ... cost more money, ready-made clothes or tailor-made clothes? 14. All ... they would tell me was that Uncle Nick was ill. 15.... did he say? 16. There had grown between them an understanding ... required no words. 17.... other things did you buy? 18. Now ... you see all the family together tell me ... you think of us. 19. «I have never been given any of Granny's things.» «... about her watch?» 20. It is for you to decide ... is to speak to the chief. 21. They're a family that would quarrel about ... way

a doorknob turns. 22. ... quality do you admire in a man? 23. He is the man ... car I noticed in the square. 24. Take these books to your brother and ask him ... are his. 25. If you ask for «the German», every one will know ... you mean.